#### Macroeconometrics Winter 2014, Y1 (Masters students)

#### Antti Ripatti<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Economics and HECER University of Helsinki

version: February 24, 2014

< □ > < @ > < E > < E > E のQ@

#### Macroeconometrics Winter 2014, Y1 (Masters students)

#### Antti Ripatti<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Economics and HECER University of Helsinki

version: February 24, 2014

< □ > < @ > < E > < E > E のQ@

## OUTLINE



- Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
- Moments of Model and Data
- 6 Matching moments
- 6 Filtering and Likelihood approach

## OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments of Model and



< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

# The Goal

The goal of the course is give an overview of the econometric methods to study how to validate macroeconomic models. If time allows, we study the use dynamic macroeconomics models to address empirical issues like

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

- Model Estimation
- Model Comparison
- Forecasting
- Measurement
- Shock Identification
- Policy Analysis

# EVOLUTION OF EMPIRICAL MACRO – PART 1: BIRTH OF LARGE MODELS

The representation of theoretical models as complete probability models dates at least to Haavelmo (1944, Econometrica)

Models were loosely related to economic theory:

- Production functions
- National account identities
- Old-Keynesian consumption function

And estimated using OLS or instrumental variables methods (2SLS).

Phillips curve was upward-sloping even in the long-run! Policy tool.

# EVOLUTION OF EMPIRICAL MACRO – PART 2B: SCENT OF NEO-CLASSICAL SYNTHESIS

• Developments in time series econometrics: cointegration and error correction models

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

- Separation of short-run (dynamics) and long-run (cointegration)
- Long-run (cointegration) builds on economic theory
- Not yet general equilibrium
- Ad-hoc dynamics
- No sensible steady-state
- Vulnerable to Lucas critique

AWM, BOF3, BOF4

# EVOLUTION OF EMPIRICAL MACRO – PART 3A: KYDLAND–PRESCOTT

Methodological revolution

Intertemporally optimizing agents. Budget and technology constraints.

#### Conceptual revolution

- In a frictionless markets under perfect competition business cycles are efficient: no need for stabilization; stabilization may be counter-productive.
- Economic fluctuations are caused by technology shocks: they are the main source of fluctuation.
- Monetary factors (price level) has a limited (or no) role
- Calibration

# EVOLUTION OF EMPIRICAL MACRO – PART 3A: KYDLAND–PRESCOTT...

#### Implementation

- Pose a question
- Use theory to address the question
- Construct the model economu
- Calibrate
- Run the experiment within the model

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Lack of statistical formality in calibration.

# EVOLUTION OF EMPIRICAL MACRO – PART 3B: BAYESIAN ESTIMATION

- Sargent (1989 JPE) presents the mapping of linearized DSGE models into state-space representation
- DeJong, Ingram and Whiteman (2000, JoE, 2000, JAE) developed methods for mapping priors over structural parameters into priors over corresponding parameters of the state-space representation enabling Bayesian inference.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

• Smets and Wouters (2003) made a real working application.

## THIS COURSE

This course builds on Part 3 (Kydland and Prescott (1982)) and Sims (2011). The aim is to learn how the model meets data.

We

- stationarize the model: restrictions implied by the balanced growth path
- approximate it with the first order Taylor approximation
- review (some of) the solution methods
- refresh the basic statistical tools to compute moments
- filter the model and the data
- introduce the Bayesian methods to study model parameters

Difference equations and lag operators

## OUTLINE



Difference equations and lag operators

- Lag operators
- Difference equations









Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

#### This section builds mostly on Sargent (1987).

# OUTLINE



- Difference equations and lag operators
  - Lag operators
  - Difference equations





Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

#### LAG OPERATORS

The backward shift or lag operator is defined as

$$Lx_t = x_{t-1}$$

$$L^n x_t = x_{t-n}$$
, for  $n = \dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots$ 

Note that if n < 0 the operator shifts  $x_t$  forward. This language is loose, since we start with the sequence

$$\{x_t\}_{t=-\infty}^{\infty}$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

where  $x_t$  is a real number. We operate on  $\{x_t\}_{t=-\infty}^{\infty}$  by *L*. This section builds mostly on Sargent (1987).

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

## OPERATIONS WITH LAG OPERATOR I

Lag operator and multiplication operator are commutative

$$L(\beta x_t) = \beta L x_t.$$

It is distributive over the addition operator

$$L(x_t + w_t) = Lx_t + Lw_t.$$

Hence, we are free to use the standard commutative, associative, and distributive algebraic laws for multiplication and addition to express the compound operator in an alternative form.

Examples

$$y_t = (a + bL)Lx_t = (aL + bL^2)x_t = ax_{t-1} + bx_{t-2}$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

#### **OPERATIONS WITH LAG OPERATOR II**

or

$$(1 - \lambda_1 L)(1 - \lambda_2 L)x_t = (1 - \lambda_1 L - \lambda_2 L + \lambda_1 \lambda_2 L^2)x_t$$
  
=  $[1 - (\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)L + \lambda_1 \lambda_2 L^2]x_t$   
=  $x_t - (\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)x_{t-1} + \lambda_1 \lambda_2 x_{t-2}.$ 

and

$$Lc = c$$

and

$$L^{0} = 1$$

<□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

# POLYNOMIALS IN THE LAG OPERATOR I Polynomial

$$A(L) = a_0 + a_1L + a_2L^2 + \dots = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} a_jL^j,$$

where  $a_i$ 's are constants.

$$A(L)x_t = (a_0 + a_1L + a_2L^2 + \cdots)x_t$$
  
=  $a_0x_t + a_1x_{t-1} + a_2x_{t-2} + \cdots = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} a_jx_{t-j}$ .

Rational A(L)

$$(L)=\frac{B(L)}{C(L)},$$

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

## POLYNOMIALS IN THE LAG OPERATOR II

where

$$B(L) = \sum_{j=0}^{m} b_j L^j, \qquad C(L) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} c_j L^j,$$

where  $b_j$ ,  $c_j$ , m and n are constants. Simple example

$$A(L) = \frac{1}{1 - \lambda L} = 1 + \lambda L + \lambda^2 L^2 + \cdots,$$

which is "useful" only if  $|\lambda| < 1$ . Why? Then

$$\frac{1}{1-\lambda L}x_t = (1+\lambda L+\lambda^2 L^2+\cdots)x_t = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\lambda^i x_{t-i}.$$

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

Difference equations and lag operators

Lag operators

#### POLYNOMIALS IN THE LAG OPERATOR III Consider the case $|\lambda| > 1$ , the following "trick" is useful:

$$\frac{1}{1-\lambda L} = \frac{-(\lambda L)^{-1}}{1-(\lambda L)^{-1}}$$
$$= -\frac{1}{\lambda L} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{\lambda} L^{-1} + \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^2 L^{-2} + \cdots \right]$$
$$= -\frac{1}{\lambda} L^{-1} - \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^2 L^{-2} - \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^3 L^{-3} + \cdots$$

Then

$$\frac{1}{1-\lambda L}x_t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}x_{t+1} - \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^2 x_{t+2} + \dots = -\sum_{i=1}^{\infty}\lambda^{-i}x_{t+i},$$

which is geometrically declining weighted sum of *future* values of  $x_t$ .

Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

## OUTLINE



- Difference equations and lag operators
  - Lag operators
  - Difference equations







Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

#### DIFFERENCE EQUATION I

Consider the following difference equation

$$y_t = \lambda y_{t-1} + bx_t + a, \quad t = \dots, -1, 0, 1, \dots,$$
 (1)

where  $y_t$  is an *endogenous* variable and  $x_t$  is an *exogenous* variable and sequences of real number and  $\lambda \neq 1$ . It can be written as

$$(1-\lambda L)y_t = a + bx_t.$$

Multiply both sides by  $(1 - \lambda L)^{-1}$  to obtain

$$y_t = \frac{a}{1 - \lambda L} + \frac{b}{1 - \lambda L} x_t + c\lambda^t$$
$$= \frac{a}{1 - \lambda} + b \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + c\lambda^t.$$
(2)

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

#### DIFFERENCE EQUATION II

The reason why we have the last term is that for any constant *c* 

$$(1 - \lambda L)c\lambda^t = c\lambda^t - c\lambda\lambda^{t-1} = 0.$$

By multiplying both sides by  $1 - \lambda L$ , gives the original difference equation! This the "general solution"! To get the "particular solution" we must be able to tie down the constant *c* with an additional bit of information. An example of an additional bit of information is

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{i=n}^{\infty} \lambda^i x_{t-i} = 0 \quad \text{for all } t.$$

It simply says that  $\lambda^i x_{t-i}$  must be "small" for large *i*. If  $x_t$  were constant, say  $\bar{x}$ , all time, this requires  $|\lambda| < 1$ . This also results bounded constant term in the solution.

Difference equations and lag operators

- Difference equations

## DIFFERENCE EQUATION III

Assume t > 0 to see the impact of an arbitrary initial condition. Solution may be written as

$$y_t = a \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i + a \sum_{i=t}^{\infty} \lambda^i + b \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + b \sum_{i=t}^{\infty} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + c\lambda^t$$
$$= a \frac{1-\lambda^t}{1-\lambda} + a \frac{\lambda^t}{1-\lambda} + b \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + b\lambda^t \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \lambda^i x_{0-i} + c\lambda^t,$$

$$y_t = a \frac{1-\lambda^t}{1-\lambda} + b \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + \lambda^t \left( \frac{a}{1-\lambda} + b \sum_{i=t}^{\infty} \lambda^i x_{0-i} + c \right), \quad t \ge 1.$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

# DIFFERENCE EQUATION IV

The term in braces is equals  $y_0$ ! Hence

$$y_t = a \frac{1 - \lambda^t}{1 - \lambda} + b \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i x_{t-i} + \lambda^t y_0$$
  
=  $\frac{a}{1 - \lambda} + \lambda^t \left( y_0 - \frac{a}{1 - \lambda} \right) + b \sum_{i=0}^{t-1} \lambda^i x_{t-i}, \quad t \ge 1.$ 

The original difference equation (1) may be solved "forward" by applying the "forward inverse".

$$y_{t} = \frac{-(\lambda L)^{-1}}{1 - (\lambda L)^{-1}} a + b \frac{-(\lambda L)^{-1}}{1 - (\lambda L)^{-1}} x_{t} + d\lambda^{t},$$
  
$$= \frac{a}{1 - \lambda} - b \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^{i+1} x_{t+i+1} + d\lambda^{t},$$
 (3)

Difference equations and lag operators

- Difference equations

#### DIFFERENCE EQUATION V

where *d* is constant to be determined by some side condition. An example of such side condition is

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=n}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^i x_{t+i}=0.$$

Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

## DIFFERENCE EQUATION VI

Equivalence of (2) and (3)

If a = 0, then for any value of  $\lambda \neq 1$  both (2) and (3) represent solution to the difference equation (1). They are simply alternative representation of the solution! The equivalence will hold whenever

$$\frac{b}{1 - \lambda L} x_t \tag{4}$$

and

$$b\frac{-(\lambda L)^{-1}}{1-(\lambda L)^{-1}}x_t\tag{5}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

are both finite for all *t*.

It often happens that one of them fails to be finite.

Difference equations and lag operators

Difference equations

## DIFFERENCE EQUATION VII

- If the sequence {x<sub>t</sub>} is bounded and |λ| < 1, the (4) is a convergent sum for all *t*.
- If the sequence {x<sub>t</sub>} is bounded and |λ| > 1, the (5) is a convergent sum for all *t*.

Since our desire is to impose that the sequence  $\{y_t\}$  is bounded, and we do not have sufficient side conditions, then we must set c = 0 in (2) or d = 0 (3). To see that

• If  $\lambda > 1$  and c > 0, then

$$\lim_{t\to\infty}c\lambda^t=\infty.$$

• If  $\lambda < 1$  and d < 0, then

$$\lim_{t\to\infty}d\lambda^t=\infty.$$

All of the above stuff means that we need to solve "stable roots"  $|\lambda| < 1$  backward and "unstable roots"  $|\lambda| > 1$  forward,

Difference equations and lag operators

- Difference equations

#### SECOND-ORDER DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS I

# OUTLINE







#### Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic
  - Real Business Cycle Model
  - The Basic New-Keynesian Model
- Approximating
- Solving
  - Blanchard and Kahn method
  - Klein method
  - Method of undetermined coefficients



▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~



- Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
  - Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

# OUTLINE







- Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models
  - Real Business Cycle Model
  - The Basic New-Keynesian Model
- Approximating
- Solving
  - Blanchard and Kahn method
  - Klein method
  - Method of undetermined coefficients





Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

#### Households

Households chooses consumption labour and capital stock by maximizing their discounted present value of utility stream from consumption and leisure

$$\max \mathbf{E}_0 \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t \left\{ \frac{c_t^{1-\sigma}}{1-\sigma} - \phi \frac{l_t^{1+\gamma}}{1+\gamma} \right\}$$

subject to the budget constraint

$$c_t + k_{t+1} = w_t l_t + r_t k_t + (1 - \delta) k_t$$

Markets are complete and Arrow-Debreu securities.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

## Setting up Lagrangean I

The Lagrangean of the above problem can be written as

$$\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{E}_0 \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \left\{ \beta^t \frac{c_t^{1-\sigma}}{1-\sigma} - \phi \frac{l_t^{1+\gamma}}{1+\gamma} - \lambda_t \left[ c_t + k_{t+1} - w_t l_t - r_t k_t - (1-\delta) k_t \right] \right\}$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三 - のへぐ

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

## SETTING UP LAGRANGEAN II

The first order conditions with respect to  $c_t$ ,  $c_{t+1}$ ,  $l_t$  and  $k_{t+1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial c_t} &= c_t^{-\sigma} - \lambda_t = 0\\ \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial c_{t+1}} &= \beta c_{t+1}^{-\sigma} - \lambda_t = 0\\ \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial l_t} &= -\phi l_t^{\gamma} + \lambda_t w_t = 0\\ \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial k_{t+1}} &= -\lambda_t + \lambda_{t+1} r_{t+1} + \lambda_{t+1} (1 - \delta) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三 - のへぐ

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

#### THEIR OPTIMALITY CONDITIONS

$$c_t^{-\sigma} = \lambda_t$$
  

$$\beta \operatorname{E}_t c_{t+1}^{-\sigma} = \lambda_{t+1}$$
  

$$\phi l_t^{\gamma} = \lambda_t w_t$$
  

$$\lambda_t = \lambda_{t+1} (r_{t+1} + 1 - \delta)$$

<□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

# Firms

#### Maximize profits

$$\max \Pi_t = y_t - w_t l_t - r_t k_t$$

subject to the production technology

$$y_t = A_t k_t^{\alpha} l_t^{1-\alpha}.$$

Optimality conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha A_t k_t^{\alpha - 1} l_t^{1 - \alpha} &= r_t \\ (1 - \alpha) A_t k_t^{\alpha} l_t^{1 - \alpha} l_t^{-1} &= w_t. \end{aligned}$$

Investments  $i_t$  solves from the law of motion of capital:

$$k_{t+1} = (1-\delta)k_t + i_t.$$

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)
Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

#### TECHNICAL DEVELOPMENT

Techological development  $A_t$  follows AR(1) process:

$$\log A_t = \rho \log A_{t-1} + z_t,$$

where

$$z_t \sim N(0, \sigma_z^2).$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Parameter  $\rho$  determines the persistence of the process.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

### A COMPETITIVE EQUILIBRIUM

$$c_t^{-\sigma} = \beta \operatorname{E}_t c_{t+1}^{-\sigma} (r_{t+1} + 1 - \delta)$$
  

$$\phi l_t^{\gamma} = \lambda_t w_t$$
  

$$r_t = \alpha A_t k_t^{\alpha - 1} l_t^{1 - \alpha}$$
  

$$w_t = (1 - \alpha) A_t k_t^{\alpha} l_t^{1 - \alpha} l_t^{-1}$$
  

$$c_t + i_t = y_t$$
  

$$\log A_t = \rho \log A_{t-1} + z_t.$$

◆□ ▶ ◆昼 ▶ ◆ 臣 ▶ ◆ 臣 ▶ ○ 臣 ● ○ ○ ○

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

#### SOLVING THE MODEL

First, we need to specify the functional forms (or make some assumptions regarding their first and second derivatives).

Second, in this course we focus on algorithms of linear rational expectation models: *perturbation methods*. Usual steps involve

- Solving deterministic steady state.
- Linearization: approximating the nonlinear model with the first order Taylor approximation.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

## THE BASIC NEW-KEYNESIAN MODEL I

#### Let

- $y_t$  output gap,  $y_t = x_t x_t^n$ , where  $x_t$  is actual output and  $x_t^n$  is the *natural* level of output.
- $\pi_t$  inflation rate (period-by-period), ie log( $P_t/P_{t-1}$ ), (multiply by 400 to get annualized %-change)
- $\sigma > 0$  intertemporal elasticity of substitution,
  - $i_t$  nominal interest rate,
- $\rho \equiv -\log \beta$  discount rate (degree of time preference)
  - $E_t$  conditional expectation operator,  $E(\cdot | \mathcal{F}_t)$ , where  $\mathcal{F}_t$  contais all information available at (and up-to) period *t*.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

## THE BASIC NEW-KEYNESIAN MODEL II

The expectation-augmented IS curve is given by

$$y_t = E_t y_{t+1} - \frac{1}{\sigma} (i_t - E_t \pi_{t+1} - \rho) + d_t,$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

where  $d_t$  is an exogenously given stochastic process, whose properties we specify later. We call it *demand shock* 

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

# NEW-KEYNESIAN PHILLIPS CURVE

The New-Keynesian Phillips Curve is given by the following equation

$$\pi_t = \beta \operatorname{E}_t \pi_{t+1} + \lambda (y_t + m_t),$$

where  $\lambda$  is a parameter and  $m_t$  is an exogenously given stochastic process, whose other properties we specify later. We call it *mark-up* shock.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models

#### MONETARY POLICY RULE

The third unknown endogenous variable  $i_t$  is determined by the Taylor rule

$$i_t = \rho + \phi_\pi \pi_t + \phi_y y_t.$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

According to the *Taylor principle*, the monetary policy (here Taylor rule) should respond to inflation (deviation from the target — here zero) more than one-to-one, ie  $\phi_{\pi} > 1$ .

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└─ Approximating

# OUTLINE



- 2
- Difference equations and lag operators



# Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models
  - Real Business Cycle Model
  - The Basic New-Keynesian Model
- Approximating
- Solving
  - Blanchard and Kahn method
  - Klein method
  - Method of undetermined coefficients



Moments of Model and Data

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~



Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└─ Approximating

## (LOG)LINEARIZING

The *stationarized* decision rules, budget constraints and equilibrium conditions can typically be written in the following form

$$\mathbf{E}_t \, \Psi(Z_{t+1}, Z_t) = \mathbf{0},\tag{6}$$

where  $Z_t$  and 0 are  $n \times 1$  vectors.  $\Psi(\cdot)$  is a matrix valued function that is continuous and differentiable. The conditional expectation operator  $E_t$  uses information up to and including period *t*.

Note, that it is not restrictive to use the first order system, i.e. having only one lead. The higher order leads/lags may be introduced by augmenting the state vector  $Z_t$  (google "companion form").

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Approximating

The goal is to approximate (6) with a linear system, which can then be solved using the methods that will be described in the following chapters.

Notation

Denote the steady state by a variable without time index, *Z*. Small letter denotes log of original capital letter variable,  $z_t \equiv \log(Z_t)$ .

The *deterministic* steady state of (6) is

$$\Psi(Z,Z)=0,$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Note, that *Z*, the deterministic steady state of the model is a nonlinear function of the model's parameters  $\mu$ .

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Approximating

Compute the first-order Taylor approximation around the steady-state *Z*.

$$0 \approx \Psi(Z,Z) + \underbrace{\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial Z_t}(Z,Z)}_{\equiv A(\mu)} \times (Z_t - Z) + \underbrace{\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial Z_{t+1}}(Z,Z)}_{B(\mu)} \times (Z_{t+1} - Z),$$

where  $Z_t - Z$  is  $n \times 1$ ,  $\partial \Psi(Z, Z) / \partial Z_t$  denotes the Jacobian of  $\Psi(Z_{t+1}, Z_t)$  wrt  $Z_{t+1}$  evaluated at (Z, Z). To shorten

$$A(\mu)(Z_t - Z) + B(\mu) \operatorname{E}_t(Z_{t+1} - Z) = 0.$$

The coefficient matrices are function of deep (model's) parameters  $\mu$ .

Note that this is a mechanical step that is typically done by the software (e.g. Dynare, Iris). Often the Jacobian may be computed analytically.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Approximating

#### LOGARITHMIC APPROXIMATION

Logarithmic approximation is a special case of above. Note that  $Z_t = \exp(\log(Z_t))$ , and, as denoted above,  $Z_t = \exp(z_t)$ . Suppose we have

$$f(X_t, Y_t) = g(Z_t), \tag{7}$$

with strictly positive *X*, *Y*, *Z* (ie the linearization point). The steady state counterpart is f(X, Y) = g(Z).

This simple summarization is, for example, in the slides by Jürg Adamek.

(http://www.vwl.unibe.ch/studies/3076\_e/linearisation\_slides.pdf)

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└─ Approximating

Start from replacing  $X_t = \exp(\log(X_t))$  in (7),

$$f\left(e^{\log(X_t)}, e^{\log(Y_t)}\right) = g\left(e^{\log(Z_t)}\right),$$

i.e.

$$f\left(e^{x_{t}},e^{y_{t}}\right)=g\left(e^{z_{t}}\right),$$

Taking first-order Taylor approximations from both sides:

$$f(X,Y) + f'_1(X,Y)X(x_t - x) + f'_2(X,Y)Y(y_t - y) = g(Z) + g'(Z)Z(z_t - z)$$
(8)

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Often we denote  $\hat{x}_t \equiv x_t - x$ .

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Approximating

Divide both sides of (8) by f(X, Y) = g(Z) to obtain

$$1 + f'_{1}(X, Y)X(x_{t} - x)/f(X, Y) + f'_{2}(X, Y)Y(y_{t} - y)/f(X, Y)$$
  
= 1 + g'(Z)Z(z\_{t} - z)/g(Z) (9)

Note that

$$f_1'(X,Y)X/f(X,Y)$$

is the elasticity of  $f(X_t, Y_t)$  with respect to  $X_t$  at the steady-state point.

Also note, that  $100 \times (x_t - x)$  tells  $X_t$ 's relative deviation from the steady-state point.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Approximating



You may only loglinearize strictly positive variable. Typical example of a variable that may obtain negative values is the net foreign asset. This needs to be linearized!

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└─ Approximating

USEFUL LOG-LINEARIZATION RULES Denote  $\hat{x}_t \equiv \log(X_t) - \log(X)$  $X_t \approx X(1+\hat{x}_t)$  $X_{t}^{\rho} \approx X^{\rho} (1 + \rho \hat{x}_{t})$  $aX_t \approx X(1+\hat{x}_t)$  $X_t Y_t \approx X Y (1 + \hat{x}_t + \hat{y}_t)$  $Y_t(a+bX_t) \approx Y(1a+bX) + aYy_t + bXY(\hat{x}_t + \hat{y}_t)$  $Y_t(a+bX_t+cZ_t) \approx Y(a+bX+cZ) + Y(a+bX+cZ)\hat{y}_t + bXY\hat{x}_t + cZY\hat{z}$  $\frac{X_t}{aY_t} \approx \frac{X}{aY}(1 + \hat{x}_t - \hat{y}_t)$  $\frac{X_t}{Y_t + aZ_t} \approx \frac{X}{Y + aZ} \left[ 1 + \hat{x}_t - \frac{Y}{Y + aZ} \hat{y}_t - \frac{aZ}{Y + aZ} \hat{z}_t \right]$ 

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

# OUTLINE



Introduction



Difference equations and lag operators



# Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Examples of dynamic macroeconomic models
  - Real Business Cycle Model
  - The Basic New-Keynesian Model
- Approximating
- Solving
  - Blanchard and Kahn method
  - Klein method
  - Method of undetermined coefficients



Moments of Model and Data

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □



# BLANCHARD AND KAHN METHOD I

Blanchard and Kahn (1980) develop a solution method based on the following setup of a model

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_{1t+1} \\ E_t x_{2t+1} \end{bmatrix} = \tilde{A} \begin{bmatrix} x_{1t} \\ x_{2t} \end{bmatrix} + Ef_t,$$
(10)

where

- $x_{1t}$  is  $n_1 \times 1$  vector of endogenous predetermined variables = variables for which  $E_t x_{1t+1} = x_{1t+1}$ .
  - These are typically backward-looking variables.
  - (Do not exist with t + 1.)
  - For example  $k_{t+1}$  in the standard RBC model.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Solving

## BLANCHARD AND KAHN METHOD II

- $x_{2t}$  is  $n_2 \times 1$  vector of endogenous nonpredetermined variables = for which  $x_{2t+1} = E_t x_{2t+1} + \eta_{t+1}$ , where  $\eta_{t+1}$  represents an expectational error.
  - forward-looking variables
  - jump-variables
- $f_t$  contains  $k \times 1$  vector of exogenous forcing variables: e.g. shock innovations.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

•  $\tilde{A}$  is full rank.

Macroeconometrics
Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
Solving

Use Jordan normal form<sup>1</sup> of the matrix  $\tilde{A}$  as follows

 $\tilde{A} = \Lambda^{-1} J \Lambda,$ 

where *J* is a *diagonal matrix* consisting of *eigenvalues* of  $\tilde{A}$  that are ordered from in increasing value. It is partitioned as follows

$$J = \begin{bmatrix} J_1 & 0 \\ 0 & J_2 \end{bmatrix},$$

where

- the eigenvalues in *J*<sub>1</sub> lie on or within the unit circle (*stable* eigenvalues)
- the eigenvalues in *J*<sub>2</sub> lie outside the unit circle (*unstable* eigenvalues)

 $<sup>^1</sup>$ See also Spectral decomposition or Eigendecomposition or canonical form  $\circ$ 

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

# Matrix $\Lambda$ contains the corresponding *eigenvectors*. It is partitioned accordingly (and *E* too)

$$\Lambda = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda_{11} & \Lambda_{12} \\ \Lambda_{21} & \Lambda_{22} \end{bmatrix} \quad E = \begin{bmatrix} E_1 \\ E_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Solving

# STABILITY CONDITION

#### Saddle-path stability

If the number of unstable eigenvalues is equal to the number of nonpredetermined variables, the system is said to be saddle-path stable and an unique solution exists.

#### Other cases

- If the number of unstable eigenvalues exceeds the number of nonpredetermined variables, no solution exists.
- If the number of unstable eigenvalues is smaller than the number of nonpredetermined variables, there are infinite solutions

└─ Approximating and Solving DSGE Models └─ Solving

#### SADDLE-PATH CASE I Rewrite (10) as

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_{1t+1} \\ E_t x_{2t+1} \end{bmatrix} = \Lambda^{-1} J \Lambda \begin{bmatrix} x_{1t} \\ x_{2t} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} E_1 \\ E_2 \end{bmatrix} f_t$$
(11)

and premultiply by  $\Lambda$  to obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_{1t+1} \\ E_t \, \dot{x}_{2t+1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} J_1 & 0 \\ 0 & J_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_{1t} \\ \dot{x}_{2t} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \dot{E}_1 \\ \dot{E}_2 \end{bmatrix} f_t,$$

where

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_{1t} \\ \dot{x}_{2t} \end{bmatrix} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda_{11} & \Lambda_{12} \\ \Lambda_{21} & \Lambda_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_{1t} \\ x_{2t} \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{E}_1 \\ \dot{E}_2 \end{bmatrix} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda_{11} & \Lambda_{12} \\ \Lambda_{21} & \Lambda_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} E_1 \\ E_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三 - のへぐ

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

# SADDLE-PATH CASE II

- The system is now "de-coupled" in the sense that the nonpredetermined variables are related only to the unstable eigenvalues *J*<sub>2</sub> of *Ã*.
- Hence, we have two "seemingly unrelated" set of equations.
- As in the univariate case, we derive the solution of the nonpredetermined variables by forward iteration and predetermined variables by backward iteration.
- We start by analysing the lower block, ie the system of the nonpredetermined variables by performing the forward interation.
- Denote  $f_{2t}$  of those  $f_t$ s that are conformable with  $E_2$ .
- The lower part of (11) is as follows

$$\dot{x}_{2t} = J_2^{-1} \operatorname{E}_t \dot{x}_{2t+1} - J_2^{-1} \dot{E}_2 f_{2t}$$

$$(12)$$

-Solving

## SADDLE-PATH CASE III

• Shift it one period and use the law-of-iterated-expectations  $(E_t(E_{t+1} x_t) = E_t x_t)$ 

$$\mathbf{E}_t \, \acute{\mathbf{x}}_{2t+1} = J_2^{-1} \, \mathbf{E}_t \, \acute{\mathbf{x}}_{2t+2} - J_2^{-1} \acute{\mathbf{E}}_2 \, \mathbf{E}_t f_{2t+1}$$

and substitute it back to (12) to obtain

$$\dot{x}_{2t} = J_2^{-2} \operatorname{E}_t \dot{x}_{2t+2} - J_2^{-2} \dot{E}_2 \operatorname{E}_t f_{2t+1} - J_2^{-1} \dot{E}_2 f_{2t}$$
(13)

• Because  $J_2$  contains the eigenvalues above the unit disc,  $(J_2^{-1})^n$  will asymptotically vanish. The iteration results

$$\dot{x}_{2t} = -\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} J_2^{-(i+1)} \dot{E}_2 \operatorname{E}_t f_{2t+i}$$

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

-Solving

## SADDLE-PATH CASE IV

• Using the definition  $\dot{x}_{2t}$ , we may write in to the form

$$x_{2t} = -\Lambda_{22}^{-1}\Lambda_{21}x_{1t} - \Lambda_{22}^{-1}\sum_{i=0}^{\infty}J_2^{-(i+1)}\dot{E}_2 \,\mathbf{E}_t f_{2t+i} \qquad (14)$$

Finally, the upper part of (11) is given by

$$x_{1t+1} = \tilde{A}_{11}x_{1t} + \tilde{A}_{22}x_{2t} + E_1 f_t, \tag{15}$$

where  $\tilde{A}_{11}$  and  $\tilde{A}_{22}$  are reshuffled  $\tilde{A}$  according to the above ordering.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└- Solving

## AN EXAMPLE WITH AR(1) SHOCK

Suppose

$$f_{2t+1} = \Phi f_{2t} + \varepsilon_{t+1}, \quad \varepsilon_t \sim \text{IID}(0, \Sigma)$$

and  $\Phi$  is full rank and its roots are within the unit disc (ie stationary VAR(1)).

Then

$$\mathbf{E}_t f_{2t+i} = \Phi^i f_{2t}, \quad i \ge 0$$

and (14) becomes

$$x_{2t} = -\Lambda_{22}^{-1}\Lambda_{21}x_{1t} - \Lambda_{22}^{-1}(I - \Phi J_2^{-1})^{-1} \dot{E}_2 f_{2t}$$
(16)

▲ロト ▲御 ト ▲ 臣 ト ▲ 臣 ト ○ 臣 - のへで

### "VAR" form

Stacking sets of equations (14) and (15) gives the following

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x_{1t+1} \\ x_{2t+1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\equiv x_{t+1}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{A}_{11} & \tilde{A}_{22} \\ -\Lambda_{22}^{-1}\Lambda_{21} & 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\equiv F_1} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} x_{1t} \\ x_{2t} \end{bmatrix}}_{\equiv x_t} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} E_1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\Lambda_{22}^{-1}(I - \Phi J_2^{-1})^{-1} \dot{E}_2 \end{bmatrix}}_{\equiv F_{\Gamma}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} f_{1t} \\ f_{2t} \end{bmatrix}}_{\equiv f_t}$$
(17)

ie

$$x_{t+1} = F_1 x_t + F_{\Gamma} f_t$$

<□> < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

ISSUES

- The model variables has to be classified either predetermined or nonpredetermined. → model-specific system reduction may be required.
- *Ã* has to be a full rank matrix. Hence, identities are not allowed!

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

# Example: NK model in BK form I

Recall the basic New-Keynesian model:

• Expectation-augmented IS curve

$$y_t = E_t y_{t+1} - \frac{1}{\sigma} \left( i_t - E_t \pi_{t+1} - \rho \right) + d_t$$
(18)

• Phillips curve

$$\pi_t = \beta \operatorname{E}_t \pi_{t+1} + \lambda (y_t + m_t), \qquad (19)$$

• and the monetary policy rule

$$i_t = \rho + \phi_\pi \pi_t + \phi_y y_t. \tag{20}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

# EXAMPLE: NK MODEL IN BK FORM II

And assume that  $d_t$  and  $m_t$  are *white noise*, is independent with zero mean, and a constant variance.

We aim finding the representation (10). Substitute (20) into (18) to obtain the following system of equations. After substitution, all variables  $y_t$  and  $\pi_t$  are non-predetermined.

$$y_t = \mathcal{E}_t y_{t+1} - \frac{1}{\sigma} \left( \phi_\pi \pi_t + \phi_y y_t - \mathcal{E}_t \pi_{t+1} \right) + d_t$$
  
$$\pi_t = \beta \mathcal{E}_t \pi_{t+1} + \lambda (y_t + m_t).$$

or

$$\left(1+\frac{\phi_{\pi}}{\sigma}\right)y_t = \mathbf{E}_t \, y_{t+1} - \frac{1}{\sigma} \left(\phi_{\pi}\pi_t - \mathbf{E}_t \, \pi_{t+1}\right) + d_t$$
$$\pi_t = \beta \, \mathbf{E}_t \, \pi_{t+1} + \lambda(y_t + m_t).$$

▲ロト ▲御 ト ▲ 臣 ト ▲ 臣 ト ○ 臣 - のへで

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└- Solving

## EXAMPLE: NK MODEL IN BK FORM III

Moving expectation-related terms to the left:

$$E_t y_{t+1} + \frac{1}{\sigma} E_t \pi_{t+1} = \left(1 + \frac{\phi_{\pi}}{\sigma}\right) y_t + \frac{\phi_{\pi}}{\sigma} \pi_t - d_t$$
$$\beta E_t \pi_{t+1} = -\lambda y_t + \pi_t - \lambda m_t.$$

Same in the matrix form

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1/\sigma \\ 0 & \beta \end{bmatrix}}_{A_0} \underbrace{\mathbf{E}_t \begin{bmatrix} y_{t+1} \\ \pi_{t+1} \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{E}_t x_{t+1}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1+\phi_y/\sigma & \phi_\pi/\sigma \\ -\lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{A_1} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} y_t \\ \pi_t \end{bmatrix}}_{x_t} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda \end{bmatrix}}_{E^*} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} d_t \\ m_t \end{bmatrix}}_{f_t}$$

ie

$$A_0 E_t x_{t+1} = A_1 x_t + E^* f_t.$$
 (21)

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

Macroeconometrics
Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
Solving

# EXAMPLE: NK MODEL IN BK FORM IV

To obtain form (10), we need to pre-multiply the previous equation by  $A_0^{-1}$ . Naturally, the parameter values need to be determined such that  $A_0$  is invertible. Then

$$\mathbf{E}_t x_{t+1} = \underbrace{A_0^{-1} A_1}_{\equiv \tilde{A}} x_t + \underbrace{A_0^{-1} E^{\star}}_{\equiv E} f_t.$$

The matrices  $\tilde{A}$  and E are the following

$$\begin{split} \tilde{A} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 + \phi_y / \sigma + \lambda / (\beta \sigma) & \phi_\pi / \sigma - 1 / (\beta \sigma) \\ & -\lambda / \beta & 1 / \beta \end{bmatrix} \\ E &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & \lambda / (\beta \sigma) \\ 0 & -\lambda / \beta \end{bmatrix}. \end{split}$$

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

# KLEIN'S METHOD I

Klein (2000) proposes a method that overcome some of the drawbacks of Blanchard and Kahn (1980) by allowing singular  $\tilde{A}$ . It is also computationally fast. The system has to be in the form

$$\tilde{A} E_t x_{t+1} = \tilde{B} x_t + E f_t, \qquad (22)$$

where  $f_t$  ( $n_z \times 1$  vector) follows the VAR(1)<sup>2</sup>.  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\tilde{B}$  are  $n \times n$  matrices, and  $E n \times n_z$  matrix.

$$f_t = \Phi f_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t, \quad \varepsilon_t \sim \text{IID}(0, \Sigma)$$

and  $\tilde{A}$  may be singular (reduced rank). This mean that we may have static equilibrium conditions (like identities) in the system.

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

# KLEIN'S METHOD II

Decompose  $x_t$  to predetermined<sup>3</sup>  $x_{1t}$  and nonpredetermined  $x_{2t}$  variables as before. Then

$$\mathbf{E}_t \, \mathbf{x}_{t+1} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_{1t+1} \\ \mathbf{E}_t \, \mathbf{x}_{2t+1} \end{bmatrix}$$

As before the system will be de-coupled according to  $x_{1t}$  ( $n_1 \times 1$ ) and  $x_{2t}$  ( $n_2 \times 1$ ). Generalized Schur decomposition, that allows singularity is used instead of standard spectral decomposition. Applying it to  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\tilde{B}$  gives

$$Q\tilde{A}Z = S \tag{23}$$

$$Q\tilde{B}Z = T, (24)$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

# KLEIN'S METHOD III

where Q, Z are *unitary*<sup>4</sup> and S, T *upper triangular* matrices with diagonal elements containing the generalized eigenvalues of  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\tilde{B}$ . Eigenvalues are ordered as above. Z is partitioned accordingly

$$Z = \begin{bmatrix} Z_{11} & Z_{12} \\ Z_{21} & Z_{22} \end{bmatrix}.$$

 $Z_{11}$  is  $n_1 \times n_1$  and corresponds the stable eigenvalues of the system and, hence, conforms with  $x_1$ , ie predetermined variables.

Next we *triangularize* the system (22) to stable and unstable blocks

$$z_t \equiv \begin{bmatrix} s_t \\ u_t \end{bmatrix} = Z^H x_t,$$

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの
Macroeconometrics
Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
Solving

# KLEIN'S METHOD IV

where  $^{H}$  denotes the Hermitian transpose. and (23) and (24) can be written as

 $\tilde{A} = Q'SZ^H$  $\tilde{B} = Q'TZ^H.$ 

Premultiplying the partitioned system by Q we obtain

$$S \operatorname{E}_t z_{t+1} = T z_t + Q E f_t \tag{25}$$

and since S and T are upper triangular, (22) may be written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_t \begin{bmatrix} s_{t+1} \\ u_{t+1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_t \\ u_t \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} Q_1 \\ Q_2 \end{bmatrix} Ef_t.$$
(26)

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

└- Solving

## KLEIN'S METHOD V

Due to block-diagonal (recursive) structure, the process  $u_t$  is unrelated  $s_t$ . We iterate this forward to obtain<sup>5</sup>

$$u_t = -T_{22}^{-1} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} [T_{22}^{-1} S_{22}]^i Q_2 E \operatorname{E}_t f_{t+i}.$$

Since  $f_t$  is VAR(1), we obtain

$$u_t = Mf_t$$
$$\operatorname{vec} M = [(\Phi' \otimes S_{22}) - I_n \otimes T_{22}]^{-1} \operatorname{vec}[Q_2 E].$$

This solution of the unstable component is used to solve the stable block, resulting

$$s_{t+1} = S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}s_t + S_{11}^{-1}[T_{12}M - S_{12}M\Phi + Q_1E]f_t - Z_{11}^{-1}Z_{12}M\varepsilon_{t+1}.$$

Given the definition of  $u_t$  and  $s_t$ , we may express the solution in terms of original variables.

<sup>2</sup>We drop the constant term (and other stationary deterministic stuff) to simplify algebra.

- Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

-Solving

## METHOD OF UNDETERMINED COEFFICIENTS Following Anderson and Moore (1985) (AiM) and Zagaglia (2005), DSGE model may be written in the form

$$H_{-1}z_{t-1} + H_0 z_t + H_1 E_t z_{t+1} = D\eta_t,$$
(27)

where  $z_t$  is vector of endogenous variables and  $\eta_t$  are pure innovations with zero mean and unit variance. The solution to (27) takes the form

$$z_t = B_1 z_{t-1} + B_0 \eta_t,$$

where

$$B_0 = S_0^{-1}D,$$
  
 $S_0 = H_0 + H_1B_1.$ 

 $B_1$  satisfies the identity

$$H_{-1} + H_0 B_1 + H_1 B_1^2 = 0.$$

Macroeconometrics
Approximating and Solving DSGE Models
Solving

# SUMMARIZING I

The general feature of the solution methods is that they result a "VAR(1)" representation of the model

$$\xi_t = F_0(\mu) + F_1(\mu)\xi_{t-1} + F_{\Gamma}(\mu)v_t,$$
(28)

where

- Variable vector  $\xi_t$  are the variables in the model.
- matrices *F<sub>i</sub>*(μ) are complicated (and large) matrices whose exact form depends on the solution method (See, eg, previous slide)
- They are also highly nonlinear function of the "deep" parameters μ of the economic model
  - The parameters  $\mu$  include, among others, the parameters specifying the stochastic processes of the model: shock variances, for example

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

## SUMMARIZING II

- We may use this representation to analytically calculate various model moments for given parameter values.
- We may use this also for simulating the model.
- Note that we do not know anything about the data at this stage.

# OUTLINE

### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters



### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model



- Introduction

# OUTLINE

### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters

4

## Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model



- Introduction

## The Idea

The ultimate purpose of bringing model and data together is to validate the model. This means

- comparing model and data
- using data to calibrate (some) parameters of the model
- figuring out in where the model fits the data and where not How to do it:
  - computing model moments (statistics), and
  - comparing them to data moments (statistics)

More challenging task is to estimate parameters (or other objects) of the model.

```
Macroeconometrics
```

-Introduction

## HOW TO COMPUTE MODEL MOMENTS

(After all the hazzle of the previous section) the model is in the linear form. Many statistics may be computed analytically using the linear form. For some statistics this is not possible. The simulation (Monte Carlo) alternative:

```
N = 10000; % large number
for iN = 1:N
    draw_shock_innovation;
    relying_on_the_solution_compute_endog._variables;
    compute_test_statistic;
    save_it_to_vector;
end;
my_test_statistic = meanc(test_statistic)
```

Introduction

## COMPARING DATA AND MODEL

Note that the data moments are estimated!

- $\longrightarrow$  there is uncertainty related to these estimates
- $\longrightarrow$  use confidence bounds (of data moments) when comparing data moments and model moments

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Very often the comparison involves plotting. Do not forget bounds in plots.

Univariate comparisons are straightforward. Multivariate comparison involves identification problem: impulse responses

-Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction

## WHAT MOMENTS?

Standard moments are

- means: great ratios
- variances: relative to, for example, output
- correlation: with different lags
- similar moments in *frequency* domain
  - spectral density
  - coherence
  - gain
- impulse responses
- forecast error variance decomposition
- other VAR statistics

People are innovative in comparing, for example, forecasts!

-Introduction

## STRUCTURE OF THIS SECTION

- Introduce univariate or bivariate moments in time domain: auto and cross correlations
- Same stuff in frequency domain
- Have a look at multivariate stuff: VARs

### Exclusions

I exclude

- univariate time series model (eg ARMA): you should know these!
- nonlinear time series models (eg ARCH): the current model solution methods (as we use them) do not support nonlinearity

- Moments of Model and Data

-Autocovariance functions and alike

## OUTLINE







Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters

4

#### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model



-Moments of Model and Data

- Autocovariance functions and alike

### STOCHASTIC PROCESS

Definition (Stochastic process)

A set of random variables

$$\{X_t = (x_{1t}, \ldots, x_{mt})' | t \in \mathcal{T}\}$$

is called *stochastic process*, where t denotes time and  $X_t$  is an observation that is related to time t.

Since this is infinite dimensional, we cannot determine its' joint distribution. According to Kolmogorov (1933), under certain regularity conditions we can characterize its joint distribution by its' finite dimensional marginal distributions

$$F_{X_{t_1},\ldots,X_{t_p}}$$
  $(t_1,\ldots,t_p\in\mathcal{T}).$ 

Large part of material of this section are based on the excellent lecture notes by Markku Rahiala

(http://stat.oulu.fi/rahiala/teachmr.html)

Autocovariance functions and alike

## STOCHASTIC PROCESS AND ITS PROPERTIES I

### Definition (Stationarity)

If

$$F_{X_{t_1},...,X_{t_p}} = F_{X_{t_1+\tau},...,X_{t_p+\tau}}$$

for all p,  $\tau$ ,  $t_1$ , ...,  $t_p$ , the process is strictly stationary. If it applies only to the first and second moments, ie

$$\begin{cases} E X_t \equiv \mu = \text{ constant} \\ \Gamma(\tau) = E X_{t+\tau} X'_t - \mu \mu' = \text{cov} (X_{t+\tau}, X_t) \end{cases} \text{ and}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

the process is weakly stationary.

-Moments of Model and Data

Autocovariance functions and alike

## STOCHASTIC PROCESS AND ITS PROPERTIES II

Definition (Autocovariance function)

$$\Gamma(\tau) = \operatorname{cov}\left(X_{t+\tau}, X_t\right)$$

is called autocovariance function.

Note that  $\Gamma(\tau)' = \Gamma(-\tau)$ . A weakly stationary process  $\{X_t\}$  that has  $\Gamma(\tau) = 0$  (for all  $\tau \neq 0$ ) is called white noise.

▲ロト ▲御 ト ▲ 臣 ト ▲ 臣 ト ○ 臣 - のへで

- Autocovariance functions and alike

## STOCHASTIC PROCESS AND ITS PROPERTIES III

Definition (Autocovariance-generating function)

For each covariance-stationary (weakly stationary) process  $X_t$  we calculate the sequence of autcovariances  $\{\Gamma(\tau)\}_{\tau=-\infty}^{\infty}$ . If this sequence is *absolutely summable*, we may summarize the autocovariances through a scalar-valued function called autocovariance-generating function

$$g_X(z) = \sum_{\tau=-\infty}^{\infty} \Gamma(\tau) z^{\tau},$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

where *z* is complex scalar.

- Autocovariance functions and alike

## STOCHASTIC PROCESS AND ITS PROPERTIES IV

### Definition (Autocorrelation)

Let  $\{x_t\}$  be weakly stationary scalar process and  $\gamma_x(\tau)$  its autocovariance function. Then

$$\gamma_x(0) = \operatorname{var}(x_t) = \sigma_x^2 = \operatorname{constant}$$

and

$$\rho_x(\tau) = rac{\gamma_x(\tau)}{\gamma_x(0)} = rac{\operatorname{cov}(x_{t+\tau}, x_t)}{\operatorname{var}(x_t)}$$

depends only on  $\tau$ . The sequency  $\rho_x(\tau)$  (for all  $\tau = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, ...$ ).

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Moments of Model and Data

Autocovariance functions and alike

## STOCHASTIC PROCESS AND ITS PROPERTIES V

Definition (Crosscorrelation) If  $X_t = (x_{1t} \cdots x_{mt})'$  is multivariate, then function

$$\rho_{x_i,x_j}(\tau) = \frac{\operatorname{cov}(x_{i,t}, x_{j,t+\tau})}{\sqrt{\operatorname{var}(x_{i,t})\operatorname{var}(x_{j,t})}}$$

▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶▲□▶ ▲□▶ ●□

is called **cross correlation** of components  $x_{i,t}$  and  $x_{j,t}$ .

-Moments of Model and Data

- Autocovariance functions and alike

# SAMPLE COUNTERPARTS AND SOME USEFULL THEOREMS I

Definition (Sample autocorrelation)

For observations  $(x_1, ..., x_n$  the sample autocorrelation is the sequence

$$r_x(\tau) = \frac{\frac{1}{n-\tau} \sum_{t=1}^{n-\tau} (x_t - \bar{x}) (x_{t+\tau} - \bar{x})}{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^n (x_t - \bar{x})^2}, \quad \tau = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots, \pm (n-1),$$

where  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{t=1}^{n} x_t$ .

To make inference about the size of sample autocorrelation, the following theorems can be useful

Moments of Model and Data

- Autocovariance functions and alike

# SAMPLE COUNTERPARTS AND SOME USEFULL THEOREMS II

### Theorem

*Let K be fixed positive integer and*  $\{\varepsilon_t\}$  *white noise. Then* 

$$\sqrt{n}R = \sqrt{n}(r_{\varepsilon}(1) \cdots r_{\varepsilon}(K))' \sim^{asympt.} N_{K}(0, I),$$

when n approaches infinity. And

$$Q_n = (n+2) \sum_{\tau=1}^K \left(1 - \frac{\tau}{n}\right) r_{\varepsilon}(\tau)^2 \sim^{as.} \chi_K^2.$$

when n approaches infinity.

Similar results can be shown to sample crosscorrelation.

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## OUTLINE



- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters



#### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike

### • Spectral analysis

- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model



- Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

## SPECTRAL ANALYSIS I

The spectral analysis section is based on the course material by Markku Lanna and Henri Nyberg, see the course "Empirical macroeconomics" http://blogs.helsinki.fi/lanne/teaching

- In physics and engineering light is considered as electromagnetic waves that consists of in terms of energy, wavelength, or frequency.
- One may use prism to decompose light to spectrum (probably you did this in the high school).
- Similarly a stationary time series can be considered as constant electromagnetic wave.
- Economic time series can be seen as consisting of components with different periodicity.

### • trend, business cycle, seasonal component etc.

 In *frequency-domain* analysis, the idea is to measure the contributions of different periodic components in a series.

- Different components neet not be identified with regular (fixed) cycles, but there is only a tendency towards cyclical movements centered around a particular frequency.
  - For instance, the business cycle is typically defined as variation with periodicity of 2–8 years.

Frequency-domain methods are complementary to time-domain methods in studying the properties of, e.g.,

• detrending methods,

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## SPECTRAL ANALYSIS II

- seasonal adjustment methods,
- data revisions, and
- interrelations between the business cycle components of various economic variables.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

### Wave length

wave length  $\times$  frequency = constant (light speed in physics)

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## PRELIMINARIES

From high school algebra:

$$sin(x+y) = sin(x) \cdot cos(y) + cos(x) \cdot sin(y)$$
  

$$cos(x+y) = cos(x) \cdot cos(y) - sin(x) \cdot sin(y)$$
  

$$[sin(x)]^2 + [cos(x)]^2 \equiv 1$$

from which follows

$$b \cdot \cos(x) + c \cdot \sin(x) = a \cdot \cos(x + \theta),$$

where

$$a = \sqrt{b^2 + c^2}$$
 and  $\theta = \arctan\left(\frac{c}{b}\right)$ 

 $\theta$  is called *phase angle*. Complex number

$$z = x + i \cdot y \in \mathcal{C}$$
 and conjugate  $\overline{z} = x - i \cdot y \in \mathcal{C}$ 

Euler's formula

$$e^{z} = e^{x + i \cdot y} = e^{x} e^{i \cdot y} = e^{x} (\cos(y) + i \sin(y)) = 0$$

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## SPECTRAL REPRESENTATION THEOREM

Any covariance-stationary process  $X_t$  can be expressed as sum of cycles

$$X_t = \mu + \int_0^{\pi} [\alpha(\omega)\cos(\omega t) + \delta(\omega)\sin(\omega t)]d\omega.$$

The random processes  $\alpha(\cdot)$  and  $\delta(\cdot)$  have zero mean and they are not correlated across frequencies.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Spectral analysis

# FIXED CYCLES I

- Although economic time series are not characterized by cycles with fixed periodicity, let us first, for simplicity, consider fixed cycles to introduce the main concepts.
- For example, the cosine function is periodic, i.e., it produces a fixed cycle.
  - $y = \cos(x)$  goes through its full complement of values (one full cycle) as *x* (measured in radians) moves from 0 to  $2\pi$ .
  - The same pattern is repeated such that for any integer k,  $\cos(x + 2\pi k) = \cos(x)$ .
  - By defining  $x = \omega t$ , where  $\omega$  is measured in radians and t is time,  $y = \cos (\omega t)$  becomes a function of time t with fixed *frequency*  $\omega$ .
    - By setting *ω* equal to different values, *y* can be made to expand or contract in time.

- Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

## FIXED CYCLES II

- For small  $\omega$  (low frequency) it takes a long time for *y* to go through the entire cycle.
- For big  $\omega$  (high frequency) it takes a short time for *y* to go through the entire cycle.
- Example: try to play with command plot cos(180\*(pi/180)\*(x-0)) in the site www.wolframalpha.com
- Each frequency *ω* corresponds to the *period* of the cycle (denoted by *p*), which is the time taken for *y* to go through its complete sequence of values.
- Given  $\omega$ , how is the period *p* computed?
  - cos (ωt) = cos (ωt + 2π), so how many periods does it take for ωt to increase by 2π?
    - $2\pi/\omega$  periods.

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## FIXED CYCLES III

• A cycle with period 4 thus repeats itself every four periods and has frequency  $\omega = 2\pi/4 = \pi/2 \approx 1.57$  radians.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# FIXED CYCLES I

- The range of *y* is controlled by multiplying cos (ωt) by the *amplitude*, ρ.
- The location of *y* along the time axis can be shifted by introducing the *phase*, θ.
- Incorporating the amplitude and phase into *y* yields

$$y = \rho \cos (\omega t - \theta) = \rho \cos [\omega (t - \xi)],$$

where  $\xi = \theta / \omega$  gives the shift in terms of time.

・ロト・西ト・ヨト・ヨー もくの

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# FIXED CYCLES II

AMPLITUDE AND PHASE

### Example

Suppose the cosine function has a period of 4 so that it peaks at t = 0, 4, 8, ... If we want it to have peaks at t = 2, 6, 10, ..., i.e.  $\xi = 2$ , the phase  $\theta = \xi \omega = 2(2\pi/4) = \pi$ . Note, however, that this phase shift is not unambiguous because the same effect would have been obtained by setting  $\xi = -2$ , indicating  $\theta = \xi \omega = -2(2\pi/4) = -\pi$ .

Spectral analysis

# Spectrum I

- The (*power*) *spectrum* (or *spectral density*) gives the decomposition of the variance of a time series process in terms of frequency.
- The spectral density function  $s_y(\omega)$  of a weakly stationary process  $y_t$  is obtained by evaluating the autocovariance-generating function (AGF) at  $e^{-i\omega}$  and standardizing by  $2\pi$ :

$$s_{y}(\omega) = rac{1}{2\pi}g_{y}\left(e^{-i\omega}
ight) = rac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty}\gamma_{j}e^{-i\omega j},$$

where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ .

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## Spectrum II

• By de Moivre's theorem,

$$e^{-i\omega j} = \cos(\omega j) - i\sin(\omega j)$$
,

we obtain

$$s_{y}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} \gamma_{j} \left[ \cos(\omega j) - i \sin(\omega j) \right],$$

and making use of the fact that for a weakly stationary process  $\gamma_{-j} = \gamma_j$  and well-known results from trigonometry,  $s_v(\omega)$  simplifies to

$$s_{y}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \gamma_{0} + 2\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \gamma_{j} \cos\left(\omega j\right) \right].$$

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# Spectrum III

### Properties

- Assuming the sequence of autocovariances  $\{\gamma_j\}_{j=-\infty}^{\infty}$  is absolutely summable, the spectrum of  $y_t$  is a continuous, real-valued function of  $\omega$ .
- If the process *y<sub>t</sub>* is weakly stationary, the spectrum is nonnegative for all ω.
- It suffices to consider  $s_y(\omega)$  in the range  $[0, \pi]$ .
  - The spectrum is symmetric around zero, because cos (-ωj) = cos (ωj).
  - The spectrum is a periodic function of ω, i.e.,
     s<sub>y</sub> (ω + 2πk) = s<sub>y</sub> (ω), because cos [(ω + 2πk) j] = cos (ωj) for any integers k and j.

Example: White Noise

-Spectral analysis

# Spectrum IV

- To get some intuition of how the spectrum decomposes the variance of a time series in terms frequency, let us first, for simplicity, consider the white noise process.
- For a white noise process  $y_t = \varepsilon_t$ ,  $\gamma_0 = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^2$  and  $\gamma_j = 0$  for  $j \neq 0$ .
  - Hence, the AGF  $g_y(z) = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^2$  and the spectrum is flat:

$$s_{y}\left(\omega\right) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\gamma_{0} = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi}$$

• The area under the spectrum over the range  $[-\pi, \pi]$  equals  $\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2$ :

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} s_y(\omega) \, d\omega = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} \, (\pi + \pi) = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^2.$$

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## Spectrum V

#### Fact

The area under the spectrum over the range  $[-\pi, \pi]$  always equals the variance of  $y_t$ . Comparisons of the height of  $s_y(\omega)$  for different values of  $\omega$  indicate the relative importance of fluctuations at the chosen frequencies in influencing variations in  $y_t$ .

• It is useful to relate the radians  $\omega$  to the associated period (the number of units of time it takes the cyclical component with frequency  $\omega$  to complete a cycle),  $p = 2\pi/\omega$ .
-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# Spectrum VI

#### Example

The period associated with frequency  $\omega = \pi/2$  is  $2\pi/\omega = 2\pi/(\pi/2) = 4$ . With annual data, a cyclical component with frequency  $\pi/2$  thus corresponds to a cycle with a periodicity of 4 years. With quarterly data it corresponds to a cycle with a periodicity of 4 quarters or 1 year.

## Example: MA(1)

• The AGF of the MA(1) process is

$$g_{y}(z) = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2} \left(1 + \theta_{1} z\right) \left(1 + \theta_{1} z^{-1}\right).$$

◆ロト ◆舂 ト ◆臣 ト ◆臣 ト ○臣 - のへで

Moments of Model and Data

└─ Spectral analysis

## Spectrum VII

Thus

$$s_{y}(\omega) = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} g_{y}\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} \left(1 + \theta_{1}e^{-i\omega}\right) \left(1 + \theta_{1}e^{i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} \left(1 + \theta_{1}e^{i\omega} + \theta_{1}e^{-i\omega} + \theta_{1}^{2}e^{i\omega-i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} \left(1 + \theta_{1}^{2} + 2\theta_{1}\cos\left(\omega\right)\right).$$

Example: AR(1)

< □ > < @ > < E > < E > E のQ@

-Moments of Model and Data

└─ Spectral analysis

## Spectrum VIII

#### • The AGF of the AR(1) process is

$$g_{y}(z) = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2} \frac{1}{\phi(z) \phi(z^{-1})} = \frac{1}{(1 - \phi_{1} z) (1 - \phi_{1} z^{-1})}.$$

<□> < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## SPECTRUM IX Thus

 $s_y(\omega) = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} g_y(e^{-i\omega})$  $= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} \frac{1}{\left(1 - \phi_1 e^{-i\omega}\right) \left(1 - \phi_1 e^{i\omega}\right)}$  $= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} \frac{1}{\left(1 - \phi_1 e^{-i\omega}\right) \left(1 - \phi_1 e^{i\omega}\right)}$  $= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} \frac{1}{1 - \phi_1 e^{-i\omega} - \phi_1 e^{i\omega} + \phi_1^2}$  $= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^2}{2\pi} \frac{1}{1+\phi_1^2-2\phi_1\cos{(\omega)}}.$ 

Example: AR(2)

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三 - のへぐ

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# Spectrum X

- The spectrum of the AR(2) process need not be monotonically decreasing, but its peak depends on the values of φ<sub>1</sub> and φ<sub>2</sub>.
- A peak at ω<sup>\*</sup> indicates a *tendency* towards a cycle at a frequency around ω<sup>\*</sup>.
  - This stochastic cycle is often called a *pseudo cycle* as the cyclical movements are not regular.
- The peak of the spectrum can be found by setting the derivative of s<sub>y</sub> (ω) equal to zero and solving for ω.

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## SPECTRUM XI • The AGF of an AR(2) process is

$$g_{y}(z) = \sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2} \frac{1}{\phi(z) \phi(z^{-1})} \\ = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{(1 - \phi_{1}z - \phi_{2}z^{2}) (1 - \phi_{1}z^{-1} - \phi_{2}z^{-2})}$$

• Thus

$$s_{y}(\omega) = \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} g_{y}\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} \frac{1}{(1 - \phi_{1}e^{-i\omega} - \phi_{2}e^{-i2\omega})(1 - \phi_{1}e^{i\omega} - \phi_{2}e^{i2\omega})}$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi} \frac{1}{1 + \phi_{1}^{2} + \phi_{2}^{2} - 2\phi_{1}(1 - \phi_{2})\cos(\omega) - 2\phi_{2}\cos(2\omega)}$$

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM I

SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

 The spectrum of an observed time series can, in principle, be estimated by replacing the autocovariances *γ<sub>j</sub>* in the theoretical spectrum

$$s_{y}\left(\omega
ight)=rac{1}{2\pi}\left[\gamma_{0}+2\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\gamma_{j}\cos\left(\omega j
ight)
ight]$$

by their estimates  $\hat{\gamma}_i$  to obtain the sample periodogram

$$\widehat{s}_{y}\left(\omega
ight)=rac{1}{2\pi}\left[\widehat{\gamma}_{0}+2\sum_{j=1}^{T-1}\widehat{\gamma}_{j}\cos\left(\omega j
ight)
ight]$$

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM II

#### SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

- This yields a very jagged and irregular estimate of the spectrum.
  - Because we are, effectively, estimating *T* parameters with *T* observations, this pattern persists irrespective of the sample size.

#### Nonparametric Estimation

• It is reasonable to assume that  $s_y(\omega)$  will be close to  $s_y(\lambda)$  when  $\omega$  is close to  $\lambda$ .

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM III

#### SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

This suggests that s<sub>y</sub> (ω) might be estimated by a weighted average of the values of ŝ<sub>y</sub> (λ) for values of λ in the neighborhood around ω, with the weights depending on the distance between ω and λ:

$$\widehat{s}_{y}\left(\omega_{j}
ight)=\sum_{m=-h}^{h}\kappa\left(\omega_{j+m},\omega_{j}
ight)\widehat{s}_{y}\left(\omega_{j+m}
ight).$$

• *h* is a *bandwidth* parameter indicating how many frequencies around  $\omega_i$  are included in estimating  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_i)$ .

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM IV

#### SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

The *kernel* κ (ω<sub>j+m</sub>, ω<sub>j+m</sub>) gives the weight of each frequency, and these weights sum to unity,

$$\sum_{m=-h}^{h} \kappa\left(\omega_{j+m}, \omega_{j}\right) = 1.$$

#### Modified Daniell Kernel

- Several kernels are available for the nonparametric estimation of the spectrum.
- The default kernel in *R* is the modified Daniell kernel, possibly used repeatedly.
  - The kernel puts half weights at end points.

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM V

#### SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

- For example, with bandwidth parameter h = 1, the weights of  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_{j-1})$ ,  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_j)$  and  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_{j+1})$  are 1/4, 2/4 and 1/4, respectively.
- Applying the same kernel again yields weights 1/16, 4/16, 6/16, 4/16, 1/16 for  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_{j-2})$ , ...,  $\hat{s}_y(\omega_{j+2})$ , respectively.
- Choosing the bandwidth parameter is arbitrary. One possibility is to plot the estimated spectrum based on several different bandwidths and rely on subjective judgment.

#### Autoregressive Spectral Estimation

• An estimate of the spectrum can be based on an AR(*p*) model fitted to the observed time series:

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# ESTIMATION OF SPECTRUM VI

#### SAMPLE PERIODOGRAM

- Estimate an adequate AR(p) model for  $y_t$ .
- 2 Plug the estimated coefficients  $\hat{\phi}_1, \hat{\phi}_2, ..., \hat{\phi}_p$  in the expression of  $s_y(\omega)$  derived for the AR(p) model.
- The order of the AR model, *p*, must be carefully chosen.
  - If *p* is too small, i.e., the AR model does not adequately capture the dynamics of *y*<sub>t</sub>, the ensuing spectrum may be misleading.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

• If *p* is too large, the spectrum may be inaccurately estimated.

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS I

• Many commonly used methods of extracting the business cycle component of macroeconomic time series (and seasonal adjustment methods) can be expressed as linear filters,

$$y_t = \sum_{j=-r}^s w_j x_{t-j}$$

where, say,  $x_t$  is the original series and  $y_t$  its business cycle component.

• A filter changes the relative importance of the various cyclical components. To see how different frequencies are affected, the spectra of the unfiltered and filtered series can be compared.

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS II

- A more direct way is to inspect the *squared frequency response function* that gives the factor by which the filter alters the spectrum of *y*<sub>t</sub>.
- The filter may also induce a shift in the series with respect to time, and this is revealed by the *phase diagram*.

Squared Frequency Response Function Assuming the original series  $x_t$  has an infinite-order MA representation  $x_t = \psi(L) \varepsilon_t$ , the filtered series can be written as  $y_t = W(L) x_t = W(L) \psi(L) \varepsilon_t$ , where  $W(L) = w_{-r}L^{-r} + \cdots + w_{-1}L^{-1} + w_0 + w_1L + \cdots + w_sL^s$ .

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS III

The spectrum of  $y_t$  thus equals

$$s_{y}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi}g_{y}\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi}W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)\psi\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)W\left(e^{i\omega}\right)\psi\left(e^{i\omega}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_{\varepsilon}^{2}}{2\pi}W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)W\left(e^{i\omega}\right)\psi\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)\psi\left(e^{i\omega}\right)$$

$$= W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)W\left(e^{i\omega}\right)s_{x}(\omega).$$

The term  $W(e^{-i\omega}) W(e^{i\omega})$  is called the squared frequency response function and it shows how the filtering changes the spectrum of the original series. Squared Frequency Response Function:

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## LINEAR FILTERS IV

Example

Consider taking first differences of a variable  $x_t$ ,

$$y_t = x_t - x_{t-1} = (1 - L) x_t = W(L) x_t.$$

Now

$$s_{y}(\omega) = W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)W\left(e^{i\omega}\right)s_{x}(\omega),$$

i.e., the squared frequency response function equals

$$W(e^{-i\omega}) W(e^{i\omega}) = (1 - e^{-i\omega}) (1 - e^{i\omega})$$
  
= 2 - e^{i\omega} - e^{-i\omega}  
= 2 - [\cos(\omega) - i\sin(\omega) + \cos(\omega) + i\sin(\omega)]  
= 2 [1 - \cos(\omega)].

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## LINEAR FILTERS: GAIN I

In the literature, the properties of filters are often illustrated using the *gain* function,  $G(\omega)$ , which is just the modulus of the squared frequency response function (squared gain):

$$G(\omega) = \sqrt{W(e^{-i\omega})W(e^{i\omega})} \equiv \left|W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right)\right|.$$

<□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

-Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS: GAIN II

#### Example

For the first-difference filter (1 - L), the gain function is given by

$$G(\omega) = \sqrt{(1 - e^{-i\omega})(1 - e^{i\omega})}$$
$$= \sqrt{2[1 - \cos(\omega)]}.$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

This carries the same information as the squared frequency response function.

Try plot sqrt(2\*(1-cos(w)))

Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS: GAIN III

• Given the gain function  $G(\omega)$ , the relationship between  $s_y(\omega)$  and  $s_x(\omega)$  can be written

$$s_y(\omega) = G(\omega)^2 s_x(\omega).$$

- The gain function expresses how the employed filter serve to isolate cycles.
  - Gain function with the value 0 indicates that the filter eliminates those frequencies.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

## LINEAR FILTERS: PHASE DIAGRAM I

• The squared frequency response function  $W(e^{-i\omega}) W(e^{i\omega})$  takes on real values only. However, the frequency response function  $W(e^{-i\omega})$  is, in general a complex quantity,

$$W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right) = W^{*}\left(\omega\right) + iW^{\dagger}\left(\omega\right)$$

where  $W^*(\omega)$  and  $W^{\dagger}(\omega)$  are both real.

• The phase diagram, i.e., the slope of the phase function

$$Ph(\omega) = \tan^{-1}\left[-W^{\dagger}(\omega) / W^{*}(\omega)\right]$$

gives the delay in time periods.

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# LINEAR FILTERS: PHASE DIAGRAM II

The phase diagram measures the shift that how much the lead-lag relationships in time series are altered by the filter.

Example

Consider a filter that shifts the series back by three time periods,

$$y_t = x_{t-3} = L^3 x_t = W(L) x_t.$$

The frequency reponse function equals  $W(e^{-i\omega}) = e^{-3i\omega} = \cos(3\omega) - i\sin(3\omega)$  Thus  $Ph(\omega) = \tan^{-1}[\sin(3\omega) / \cos(3\omega)] = \tan^{-1}[\tan(3\omega)] = 3\omega$ . In other words, the phase diagram is a straight line with slope 3.

Phase Diagram: Symmetric Filter

-Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

## LINEAR FILTERS: PHASE DIAGRAM III

Most filters used to extract the business cycle component of macroeconomic time series are symmetric.

For a symmetric linear filter, the phase function equals zero, i.e., they exhibit no phase shift.

The frequency response function equals

$$W\left(e^{-i\omega}\right) = w_{-r}e^{-ri\omega} + \dots + w_{-1}e^{-i\omega} + w_0$$
$$+w_1e^{i\omega} + \dots + w_re^{ri\omega}$$
$$= \sum_{j=-r}^r w_j \cos\left(\omega j\right) - i\sum_{j=-r}^r w_j \sin\left(\omega j\right)$$
$$= w_0 + 2\sum_{j=1}^r \cos\left(\omega j\right).$$

Moments of Model and Data

-Spectral analysis

## LINEAR FILTERS: PHASE DIAGRAM IV

Hence,  $W^{\dagger}(\omega) = 0$ , indicating that  $Ph(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \left[ -W^{\dagger}(\omega) / W^{*}(\omega) \right] = 0.$ 

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# **CROSS-SPECTRAL ANALYSIS I**

- In addition to the spectra of single time series, the relationships between pairs of variables can be examined in the frequency domain.
- The spectrum can be generalized for the vector case, and the cross spectrum between *y*<sub>t</sub> and *x*<sub>t</sub> is defined analogously with the spectrum of a single series,

$$s_{yx}\left(\omega\right) = rac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{\tau=-\infty}^{\infty}\gamma_{yx}\left(\tau\right)e^{-i\omega\tau}.$$

• Instead of the cross spectrum, functions derived from it (phase and coherence) allow for convenient interpretation of the relationship between two variables in the frequency domain.

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# **CROSS-SPECTRAL ANALYSIS II**

• Given data on *y* and *x*, the cross spectrum and the derived functions can be computed analogously to the power spectrum. In particular, some smoothing is required to obtain consistent estimators of the phase and coherence.

The cross-spectral density function can be expressed in terms of its real component  $c_{yx}(\omega)$  (the cospectrum) and imaginary component  $q_{yx}$  (the quadrature spectrum)

$$s_{yx}(\omega) = c_{yx}(\omega) + i q_{yx}(\omega).$$

In polar form, the cross-spectral density can be written

$$s_{yx}(\omega) = R(\omega) e^{i\theta(\omega)},$$

◆ロト ◆昼 ト ◆ 臣 ト ◆ 臣 ト ◆ 回 ト ◆ 回 ト

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

## **CROSS-SPECTRAL ANALYSIS III**

where

$$R(\omega) = \sqrt{c_{yx}(\omega)^2 + q_{yx}(\omega)^2}$$

and

$$\theta(\omega) = \arctan \frac{-q_{yx}(\omega)}{c_{yx}(\omega)}.$$

- The function  $R(\omega)$  is the gain function.
- $\theta(\omega)$  is called the phase function.

-Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# PHASE DIAGRAM

- The phase function has the same interpretation as in the case of a linear filter.
  - If in the plot of the phase function against *ω* (the phase diagram), the phase function is a straight line over some frequency band, the direction of the slope tells which series is leading and the amount of the slope gives the extent of the lag.
    - The lag need not be an integer number.
    - If the slope is zero there is no lead-lag relationship.
    - If the slope is positive, the first variable is lagging.
    - If the slope is negative, the first variable leading.
- A confidence band may be computed around the estimated phase function to evaluate statistical significance.

- Moments of Model and Data

Spectral analysis

# COHERENCE

- The coherence measures the strength of the relationship between two variables, *y*<sub>t</sub> and *x*<sub>t</sub>, at different frequencies.
- The (squared) coherence is defined analogously to correlation:

$$C(\omega) = \frac{\left|s_{yx}(\omega)\right|^2}{s_x(\omega)s_y(\omega)},$$

and it can be interpreted as a measure of the correlation between the series y and x at different frequencies.

- $0 \le C(\omega) \le 1$
- If C (ω) is near one, the ω-frequency components of *y* and *x* are highly (linearly) related, and if C (ω) is near zero, these components are only slightly related.
- A confidence band can be used to evaluate the statistical significance.

-Moments of Model and Data

- Measuring Business Cycles

# OUTLINE



- Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters



#### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model



Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

#### (This relies on Lanne's and Nyberg's material).

-Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

# METHODS FOR EXTRACTING THE CYCLICAL COMPONENT

- A number of methods are commonly used to extract the business cycle component of macroeconomic time series.
- In this course, we concentrate on:
  - Linear detrending (fitting a linear trend model)
  - Differencing
  - Beveridge-Nelson decomposition
  - Filters

• As discussed above, a reasonable detrending method must

- allow for variation over time in the growth rate and
- ensure that short-term fluctuations are correctly categorized as cyclical deviations from trend.
- In addition, the detrended time series must be stationary, i.e., its frequency response must be zero at frequency zero.

- Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

# LINEAR DETRENDING AND DIFFERENCING

- These two methods are conducted under the implicit assumption that the growth rate of *y*<sub>t</sub> is constant.
- In linear detrending, a constant term and a linear trend is regressed to  $y_t$ . In other words,  $y_t = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 t + c_t$ ).
  - The estimated cyclical component is  $\hat{c}_t = y_t \hat{\alpha}_0 \hat{\alpha}_1 t$ .
  - Parameter *α*<sub>1</sub>, and its estimate *α̂*<sub>1</sub>, can be interpreted as a trend coefficient.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

-Moments of Model and Data

-Measuring Business Cycles

## LINEAR DETRENDING AND DIFFERENCING

• The first-order difference leads to the cyclical component

$$c_t = y_t - y_{t-1}.$$

- The choice between detrending and differencing depends on which one provides a more appropriate representation of y<sub>t</sub> = log(Y<sub>t</sub>).
- In practice, the choice of either specification is problematic as the data do not appear to follow a constant average growth rate throughout the sample period.

- Moments of Model and Data

-Measuring Business Cycles

## BEVERIDGE-NELSON DECOMPOSITION I

- Starting point: Any I(1) process y<sub>t</sub> consists of the stationarity component η<sub>t</sub> and the permanent (trend) component ξ<sub>t</sub>, y<sub>t</sub> = ξ<sub>t</sub> + η<sub>t</sub>.
- Any I(1) process  $y_t$  whose first difference  $\Delta y_t$  satisfies

$$\Delta y_t = \psi(L) \varepsilon_t = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \psi_j \varepsilon_{t-j},$$

where  $\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} j |\psi_j| < \infty$ ,  $E(\Delta y_t) = 0$ , with  $\varepsilon_t$  a white noise process, can be written as the sum of

- a random walk  $\psi(1)\varepsilon_t$  or equivalently  $\Delta\xi_t = \psi(1)\varepsilon_t$
- a stationary process  $\eta_t$ , and
- initial conditions  $y_0 \eta_0$ .
- η<sub>t</sub> is often interpreted as the cyclical component c<sub>t</sub> of the series y<sub>t</sub>.

- Moments of Model and Data

-Measuring Business Cycles

## BEVERIDGE-NELSON DECOMPOSITION I IN PRACTICE

The Beveridge-Nelson decomposition can be applied in the following steps

- Identify an appropriate ARMA model for  $\Delta y_t$ , estimate the parameters  $\psi(1)$  and save the residuals  $\hat{\varepsilon}_t$ .
- Given the initial value of  $\xi_0$ , the trend component can be generated following the presentation  $\Delta \hat{\xi}_t = \hat{\psi}(1)\hat{\varepsilon}_t$ .
- Construct the cyclical component  $\hat{c}_t = y_t \hat{\xi}_t$ .

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

-Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

## BEVERIDGE-NELSON DECOMPOSITION II IN PRACTICE

#### Example

Assume that ARMA(1,1) model is an appropriate model for  $\Delta y_t$ . This means that  $\psi(1) = \frac{\theta(1)}{\phi(1)} = \frac{1+\theta_1}{1-\phi_1}$ . Given the initial value  $\xi_0$ , the estimated parameters  $\hat{\theta}_1$  and  $\hat{\phi}_1$  and residuals  $\hat{\varepsilon}_t$ , the trend component can be constructed as  $\Delta \hat{\xi}_t = \frac{1+\hat{\theta}_1}{1-\hat{\phi}_1} \hat{\varepsilon}_t$ .
- Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

#### FILTERS USING FILTERS TO ISOLATE CYCLES

- Filters are tools designed to eliminate the influence of cyclical variation at various frequencies.
- Low frequencies are associated with cycles of long periods of oscillation (infrequent shifts from a peak to trough) and vice versa with high frequencies.
  - Slowly evolving trends (i.e. cycles with an infinite periodicity) are associated with very low frequencies.
  - Constant trend is associated with zero frequency  $\omega = 0$ .

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Measuring Business Cycles

# HIGH-PASS AND BAND-PASS FILTERS I

- Two kinds of filters are used to extract the business cycle component (with period of 2–8 years) of quarterly time series.
  - A *high-pass filter* passes only components with periodicity less than or equal to 32 quarters (or with frequency  $\omega$  greater than or equal to  $2\pi/32 = \pi/16 \approx 0.20$ ).
    - The frequency response function equals 0 for  $\omega < \pi/16$  and 1 for  $\omega \ge \pi/16$ .
    - A high-pass filter passes also variation associated with seasonal frequencies, so it can only be applied to seasonally adjusted data.
  - A *band-pass filter* passes only components with periodicity between 8 and 32 quarters (or with frequency between  $2\pi/8 = \pi/4 \approx 0.79$  and  $2\pi/32 = \pi/16 \approx 0.20$ ).

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Measuring Business Cycles

### HIGH-PASS AND BAND-PASS FILTERS II

- The frequency response function equals 1 for  $\pi/16 \le \omega \le \pi/4$  and zero otherwise.
- With a finite number of observations it is not possible to filter out exactly the desired frequencies.

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Measuring Business Cycles

# HODRICK-PRESCOTT FILTER I

- The Hodrick-Prescott filtering is probably the most commonly used method of extracting business cycle components in macroeconomics.
- The general idea is to compute the growth (trend) component *g*<sub>t</sub> and cyclical component *c*<sub>t</sub> of *y*<sub>t</sub> by minimizing the magnitude

$$\sum_{t=1}^{T} \underbrace{(y_t - g_t)}_{c_t}^2 + \lambda \sum_{t=1}^{T-1} \left[ (g_{t+1} - g_t) - (g_t - g_{t-1}) \right]^2.$$

• The second term minimizes the changes in the growth rate over time while the first term bringing *g*<sub>t</sub> as close as possible to the observed series *y*<sub>t</sub>.

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Measuring Business Cycles

## HODRICK-PRESCOTT FILTER II

- The smoothing parameter *λ* tells how much weight is given to the first objective.
  - If  $\lambda = 0$ ,  $g_t = y_t$  (no smoothing).
  - The greater  $\lambda$  is, the smoother the growth component. When  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $g_t$  is a straight line.
- Using the lag operator *L*, the cyclical component produced by the Hodrick-Prescott filter can be written as (see, Baxter and King, 1999)

$$c_{t} = \left[\frac{\lambda (1-L)^{2} (1-L^{-1})^{2}}{1+\lambda (1-L)^{2} (1-L^{-1})^{2}}\right] y_{t}.$$

• The filter removes unit root components.

- Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

## HODRICK-PRESCOTT FILTER III

- The filter is a symmetric infinite-order two-sided moving average.
  - *c<sub>t</sub>* depends on past and future values of *y<sub>t</sub>*, *t* = 1, 2, ..., *T*. Therefore, the first and last values of *c<sub>t</sub>* are inaccurate and may change considerably as new observations become available.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

• The filter introduces no phase shift.

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Measuring Business Cycles

# HODRICK-PRESCOTT FILTER GAIN

- With quarterly data *λ* is most often set to 1600, which produces a filter reasonably close to the ideal high-pass filter.
- With annual data three values of *λ*, 400, 100 and 10 are the most common. In this case the filter is not so close to the ideal filter.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

- Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

# BAXTER-KING FILTER

• The cyclical component extracted by all high-pass and band-pass filters are infinite two-sided symmetric moving averages of *y*<sub>t</sub>,

$$c_t = \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} w_j y_{t-j}.$$

• Baxter and King suggest approximating these filters by truncating,

$$c_t = \sum_{j=-K}^{K} w_j y_{t-j},$$

and selecting the weights  $w_j$  based on the frequencies that are filtered out.

• *K* observations at the beginning and end of the series are lost.

-Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

### BAXTER-KING FILTER

#### FREQUENCY RESPONSES: HIGH-PASS FILTER (BAXTER& KING (1999)



-Moments of Model and Data

Measuring Business Cycles

# BAXTER-KING FILTER

#### FREQUENCY RESPONSES: BAND-PASS FILTER



< ロト < 団 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

- Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# OUTLINE



- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters



#### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model

#### Matching moments

-Moments of Model and Data

-Multivariate time series models

# This material is based on professor Lanne's "Macroeconometrics" course.

Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# VAR model I

The VAR(p) model is a generalization of the univariate AR(p) model. For example, a two-variable VAR(2) model can be written as

$$y_{1t} = \phi_{1,11}y_{1,t-1} + \phi_{1,12}y_{2,t-1} + \phi_{2,11}y_{1,t-2} + \phi_{2,12}y_{2,t-2} + u_{1t}$$
  

$$y_{2t} = \phi_{1,21}y_{1,t-1} + \phi_{1,22}y_{2,t-1} + \phi_{2,21}y_{1,t-2} + \phi_{2,22}y_{2,t-2} + u_{2t}$$

or in matrix form,

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_{1t} \\ y_{2t} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \phi_{1,11} & \phi_{1,12} \\ \phi_{1,21} & \phi_{1,22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} y_{1,t-1} \\ y_{2,t-1} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \phi_{2,11} & \phi_{2,12} \\ \phi_{2,21} & \phi_{2,22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} y_{1,t-2} \\ y_{2,t-2} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} u_{1t} \\ u_{2t} \end{bmatrix}$$

Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# VAR MODEL II

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + \Phi_2 \mathbf{y}_{t-2} + \mathbf{u}_t.$$

Let  $\mathbf{y}_t = (y_{1t} \cdots y_{Kt})'$  be a  $K \times 1$  vector.

Definition (VAR(*p*) model) VAR(*p*) model is

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + \cdots + \Phi_p \mathbf{y}_{t-p} + \mathbf{u}_t \quad \mathbf{u}_t \sim NID_m(0, \Sigma).$$

Denote matrix polynomial  $\Phi(L) \equiv I - \Phi_1 L - \cdots - \Phi_p L^p$ .

 $\mathbf{u}_t = (u_{1t}, ..., u_{Kt})'$  is a *K*-dimensional *white noise* process:

$$E(\mathbf{u}_t) = \mathbf{0},$$
  

$$E(\mathbf{u}_t \mathbf{u}'_t) = \Sigma_u, \text{ and }$$
  

$$E(\mathbf{u}_t \mathbf{u}'_s) = \mathbf{0} \text{ for } s \neq t.$$

-Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

# VAR MODEL III

In subsequent derivations, it is often convenient to write the VAR(p) model using the lag operator *L*,

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 L \mathbf{y}_t + \Phi_2 L^2 \mathbf{y}_t + \dots + \Phi_p L^p \mathbf{y}_t + \mathbf{u}_t$$

or

$$\left(I_K - \Phi_1 L - \Phi_2 L^2 - \dots - \Phi_p L^p\right) \mathbf{y}_t = \mathbf{u}_t$$

or

$$\Phi\left(L\right)\mathbf{y}_{t}=\mathbf{u}_{t}.$$

- The VAR(*p*) model may also contain deterministic terms such as an intercept, linear trend or seasonal dummies.
- The VAR(*p*) model is a simple linear model to describe the joint probability distribution of the data.
- It is hard to interprete and, as such, rarely tells nothing about the cause and effect.

Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

### COMPANION FORM I

Sometimes it is more convenient to use the so-called companion form of the VAR(*p*) model. The VAR(*p*) process

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + \dots + \Phi_p \mathbf{y}_{t-p} + \mathbf{u}_t$$

can be written as the following VAR(1) process

$$\xi_t = \mathbf{F}\xi_{t-1} + \mathbf{v}_t,$$

where

$$egin{aligned} & oldsymbol{ extsf{y}}_t \equiv \left[egin{aligned} & oldsymbol{ extsf{y}}_{t-1} \ & dots \ & oldsymbol{ extsf{y}}_{t-p+1} \end{array}
ight], \end{aligned}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

#### COMPANION FORM II

$$\mathbf{F} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{\Phi}_1 & \mathbf{\Phi}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{\Phi}_{p-1} & \mathbf{\Phi}_p \\ \mathbf{I}_K & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I}_K & \cdots & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{I}_K & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix},$$
$$\mathbf{v}_t \equiv \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{u}_t \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix}$$
$$E\left(\mathbf{v}_t \mathbf{v}_s'\right) = \begin{cases} \mathbf{Q} & t = s \\ \mathbf{0} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and

< ロト < 置 ト < 差 ト < 差 ト 差 の < @</p>

-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

#### COMPANION FORM III

with

$$\mathbf{Q} \equiv \left[ egin{array}{ccccc} \Sigma_u & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & \cdots & \mathbf{0} \end{array} 
ight].$$

< □ > < @ > < E > < E > E のQ@

-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# STATIONARITY I

The VAR(p) process  $\mathbf{y}_t$  is covariance-stationary (weakly stationary) if  $E(\mathbf{y}_t)$  and  $E(\mathbf{y}_t\mathbf{y}'_{t-j})$  do not depend on the date t. In this case, the consequences of any given shock  $\mathbf{u}_t$  must eventually die out. Weak stationarity imposes the following stability condition: a VAR(p) process  $\mathbf{y}_t$  is weakly stationary if the roots of the equation

$$\left|I_K - \Phi_1 z - \Phi_2 z^2 - \dots - \Phi_p z^p\right| = 0$$

are greater than unity in absolute value. To see how this condition arises, consider for simplicity the VAR(1) process

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + \mathbf{u}_t.$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三三 - のへぐ

- Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

## STATIONARITY II

By recursive substitution, this can be written as

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1^{j+1} \mathbf{y}_{t-j-1} + \sum_{i=0}^{j} \Phi_1^i \mathbf{u}_{t-i},$$

and the effect of any shock will die out only if  $\Phi_1^j \rightarrow 0$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . From linear algebra we know that this, in turn, is the case only if all the eigenvalues of  $\Phi_1$  are less than unity in absolute value, which is equivalent to the equation

$$|I_K - \Phi_1 z| = 0$$

having all roots greater than unity in absolute value. Because a VAR(*p*) process can be written in the companion form, this condition holds for a general VAR process. It can generally be

-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

### STATIONARITY III

expressed as the matrix **F** of the VAR(1) form having all eigenvalues less than unity in absolute value or the equation

$$|I_K - \mathbf{F}z| = \left|I_K - \Phi_1 z - \Phi_2 z^2 - \dots - \Phi_p z^p\right| = 0$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

having all roots greater than unity in absolute value.

- Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

#### ESTIMATION AND TESTING

- The unrestricted stationary VAR can be estimated *consistently* by OLS, equation by equation.
- If the distribution of **u**<sub>*t*</sub> is known, it can be estimated by maximum likelihood.
- Under normality of **u**<sub>t</sub>, ML estimator is numerically equal to OLS. (Otherwise quasi-ML)
- Under regularity conditions (incl. stationarity), the OLS (ML) is asymptotically normal

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

 $\longrightarrow$  standard *t*-tests can be applied

-Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

## MODEL CHECKING

The error term  $\mathbf{u}_t$  is assumed to be normal white noise. The properties of the *estimated* error term (residuals) may be studied by

- autocorrelation, and cross-correlation of individual residual series
- Pormanteau test and LM-test for (vector) autocorrrelation.
- Autoregressive conditional heteroscedasticity may be studied by *squared* residuals.
- and normality by Jarque-Bera test.

- Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# MOVING AVERAGE REPRESENTATION I The roots of the VAR representation corresponds to the *mp* factors of equation

$$\det\left[\Phi(s^{-1})\right] = 0.$$

If they lie inside of the unit circle, and all elements in  $X_t$  are stationary the process  $X_t$  is stationary and we have the Wold decomposition

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi(L)^{-1} \mathbf{u}_t = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \Psi_j \mathbf{u}_{t-j},$$

where  $m \times m$  coefficient matrices  $\Psi_j$  (j = 0, 1, 2, ...) are called impulse responses. They can be computed recursively from

$$\Psi_i = \Phi_1 \Psi_{i-1} + \Phi_2 \Psi_{i-2} + \dots + \Phi_p \Psi_{i-p} \underset{i \to i}{=} 1, 2, \dots, 2$$

-Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

### MOVING AVERAGE REPRESENTATION II

with  $\Psi_0 = I_m$  and  $\Psi_i = 0$  for i < 0. They tell how earlier innovations  $\mathbf{u}_{t-j}$  are reflected by  $\mathbf{y}_t$  observations. The MA( $\infty$ ) representation allows for tracing out the dynamic effects of shocks to the variables. i.e.,

$$\Psi_s = rac{\partial \mathbf{y}_{t+s}}{\partial \mathbf{u}_t'}.$$

The row *i*, column *j* element of  $\Psi_s$  gives the effect of a one-unit increase in the error of the *j*th variable at time *t* on the *i*th variable at time t + s, holding all other errors constant. For instance, the first column of  $\Psi_1$  gives the effect in period 1 of a unit increase in the error of the first variable in period 0 on each variable in the system.

- Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# STRUCTURAL VAR I

The problem is that each component in  $\mathbf{u}_t$  may correlate with another component. Identification problem arises. The innovations  $\mathbf{u}_t$  may be *orthogonalized* by Cholesky decomposition:

Let  $\varepsilon_t$  be orthogonalized innovation so that

$$\mathrm{E}\,\varepsilon_t\varepsilon_t'=I.$$

Define a matrix *B* such that

$$B^{-1}\Sigma {B'}^{-1} = I.$$

which implies

$$\Sigma = BB'. \tag{29}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# STRUCTURAL VAR II

```
\varepsilon_t may be constructed using
```

 $\varepsilon_t = B^{-1} \mathbf{u}_t$ 

# Note, that this is not the only way to make the innovations orthogonal!

The Cholesky decomposition of  $\Sigma$  is a lower-triangular matrix that satisfies (29), with diagonal elements containing the square root of the diagonal elements of  $\Sigma$ . Note, that the ordering of the variables in  $\mathbf{y}_t$  affects *B*. It is not unique in that sense. The whole structural VAR litterature aims finding (economic) theoretically consistent ways to orthogonalize innovations.

- Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# STRUCTURAL VAR: B-MODEL I

The recursive structure implied by the Choleski decomposition may not always be reasonable.

Let us keep assuming that the errors of the VAR model are linear combinations of the economic shocks

$$\mathbf{u}_t = \mathbf{B}\varepsilon_t$$

and let us, for simplicity assume that " $_t$  has covariance matrix  $I_K$ . As seen above, this implies that

$$\Sigma_u = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{B}'.$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

• Because  $\Sigma_u$  is symmetric, this involves K(K+1)/2 different equations.

- Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

### STRUCTURAL VAR: B-MODEL II

- However, there are K<sup>2</sup> elements in the matrix **B**, so that we need K<sup>2</sup> − K (K + 1) /2 = K (K − 1) /2 further restrictions to identify all the K<sup>2</sup> elements.
- The K(K-1)/2 restrictions must be inferred from economic theory or institutional knowledge. This happens in Choleski decomposition.
- Once a sufficient number of restrictions have been found, the structural VAR model imposing these restrictions can be estimated by ML and its dynamic properties examined through impulse response analysis.
- The VAR model based on the assumption that u<sub>t</sub> = B"<sub>t</sub> is called the B-model (Lütkepohl 2005, Chapter 9) and it is probably the most commonly employed structural VAR model.

-Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

# STRUCTURAL VAR: AB-MODEL I

A natural extension of the B-model is the so-called AB-model, where

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u}_t = \mathbf{B}\varepsilon_t.$$

In this model, the structural shocks are identified by modelling the instantaneous relations between the observable variables directly.

Here

$$\mathbf{u}_t = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \varepsilon_t,$$

and, hence,

$$\Sigma_u = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{B}' \mathbf{A}^{-1}.$$

Thus, again, we have K(K + 1) / 2 restrictions, but now the matrices **A** and **B** have together  $2K^2$  parameters, and, therefore, we need  $2K^2 - K(K + 1) / 2$  additional restrictions.

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Multivariate time series models

## STRUCTURAL VAR: AB-MODEL II

With enough restrictions, the model can be estimated by restricted ML.

Note that the B-model is a special case of the AB-model, where **A** is the identity matrix. By restricting **B** to the identity matrix, we obtain the so-called A-model.

- Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

## FORECAST ERROR VARIANCE DECOMPOSITION I

In addition to impulse response functions, the effects of the identified structural shocks can be studied by means of their proportional contribution to the forecast error variance of each of the variables at different forecast horizons. Let us first consider the VAR(1) model

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \Phi_1 \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + \mathbf{u}_t.$$

Previously it was shown that in this case the forecast error of  $\mathbf{y}_{t+h}$  is

$$\mathbf{y}_{t+h} - E_t\left(\mathbf{y}_{t+h}\right) = \mathbf{y}_{t+h} - \Phi_1^h \mathbf{y}_t = \sum_{j=0}^{h-1} \Phi_1^j \mathbf{u}_{t+h-i}$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ □▶ ▲ □▶ = □ ● ○ ○ ○ ○

-Moments of Model and Data

└─ Multivariate time series models

#### FORECAST ERROR VARIANCE DECOMPOSITION II

and, thus, the forecast error covariance matrix is

$$\Sigma_{y}(h) = E\left[\left(\sum_{j=0}^{h-1} \Phi_{1}^{j} \mathbf{u}_{t+h-i}\right) \left(\sum_{j=0}^{h-1} \Phi_{1}^{j} \mathbf{u}_{t+h-i}\right)'\right] = \sum_{j=0}^{h-1} \Phi_{1}^{j} \Sigma_{u} \left(\Phi_{1}^{j}\right)'$$
$$= \Sigma_{u} + \Phi_{1} \Sigma_{u} \Phi_{1}' + \Phi_{1}^{2} \Sigma_{u} \left(\Phi_{1}^{2}\right)' + \dots + \Phi_{1}^{h-1} \Sigma_{u} \left(\Phi_{1}^{h-1}\right)'$$

Because any VAR(*p*) model can be written as a VAR(1) model in companion form, for a general VAR(*p*) model, this is

$$\Sigma_{y}(h) = \Sigma_{u} + \Psi_{1}\Sigma_{u}\Psi_{1}' + \Psi_{2}\Sigma_{u}\Psi_{2}' + \dots + \Psi_{h-1}\Sigma_{u}\Psi_{h-1}',$$

where  $\Psi_j$ s are the coefficient matrices of the MA( $\infty$ ) representation.

- Moments of Model and Data

- Multivariate time series models

## FORECAST ERROR VARIANCE DECOMPOSITION III

In terms of the structural shocks "*t* with diagonal covariance matrix  $\Sigma_{\varepsilon}$  such that  $\mathbf{u}_t = \mathbf{B}$ "*t*, this can be written as

$$\Sigma_{y}(h) = \Theta_{0}\Sigma_{\varepsilon}\Theta_{0}' + \Theta_{1}\Sigma_{\varepsilon}\Theta_{1}' + \Theta_{2}\Sigma_{\varepsilon}\Theta_{2}' + \dots + \Theta_{h-1}\Sigma_{\varepsilon}\Theta_{h-1},$$

where  $\Theta_j = \Psi_j \mathbf{B}$ .

The forecast error variance of the *k*th variable is thus the kth diagonal element of  $\Sigma_y$  (*h*),

$$\sigma_{k}^{2}(h) = \sum_{n=0}^{h-1} \left( \theta_{n,k1}^{2} \sigma_{1}^{2} + \theta_{n,k2}^{2} \sigma_{2}^{2} + \dots + \theta_{n,kK}^{2} \sigma_{K}^{2} \right)$$
  
= 
$$\sum_{j=1}^{K} \sigma_{j}^{2} \left( \theta_{0,kj}^{2} + \theta_{1,kj}^{2} + \dots + \theta_{h-1,kj}^{2} \right),$$

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

-Moments of Model and Data

└─ Multivariate time series models

#### FORECAST ERROR VARIANCE DECOMPOSITION IV

and the contribution of the *j*th shock  $\varepsilon_{kt}$  at horizon *h* to this is  $\sigma_j^2 \left( \theta_{0,kj}^2 + \theta_{1,kj}^2 + \cdots + \theta_{h-1,kj}^2 \right)$ . Dividing the latter by  $\sigma_k^2 (h)$  hence gives the proportional contribution of the *j*th shock to variable *k*.

By plotting the proportions of the forecast error variance accounted for by each shock at diffent forecast horizons, their importance can be assessed. For instance, it may be concluded that a shock is important only for certain variables or that its contribution for all variables is minor etc.

- Moments of Model and Data

└─ Multivariate time series models

# Some VAR based statistics I

Definition (Contemporaneous variance-covariance matrix)

Let

$$\Gamma(0) = \mathbf{E}\,\xi_t\xi_t' = \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{F}\xi_{t-1} + \mathbf{v}_t)(\mathbf{F}\xi_{t-1} + \mathbf{v}_t)' = F\Gamma(0)F' + \Sigma,$$

where  $\Gamma(0)$  denotes the contemporaneous variance-covariance matrix of  $\xi_t$ . The solution of above is given by

$$\operatorname{vec}\left(\Gamma(0)\right) = (I - \mathbf{F} \otimes \mathbf{F})^{-1} \operatorname{vec}\left(\Sigma\right).$$

Definition ( $\tau^{\text{th}}$  order covariance matrix)

$$\Gamma(\tau) = \mathbf{E} z_t z'_{t-\tau}$$
-Moments of Model and Data

Multivariate time series models

# Some VAR based statistics II

Note that

$$\Gamma(1) = \mathbf{E}(\xi_t \xi'_{t-1}) = \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{F}\xi_{t-1} + \mathbf{v}_t)\xi'_{t-1} = \mathbf{F}\Gamma(0),$$

and, in general,

$$\Gamma(\tau) = \mathbf{F}^{\tau} \Gamma(0)$$

◆ロト ◆舂 ト ◆臣 ト ◆臣 ト ○臣 - のへで

-Moments of Model and Data

Filtering the data and model

# OUTLINE



- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3

Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

- Univariate Frequency-Domain Methods
- Estimation
- Linear Filters



#### Moments of Model and Data

- Introduction
- Autocovariance functions and alike
- Spectral analysis
- Measuring Business Cycles
- Multivariate time series models
- Filtering the data and model

#### Matching moments

-Moments of Model and Data

Filtering the data and model

#### TO PRE-FILTER

Often the theoretical model show no growth. The balanced growth path issues are then ignored.

Ironically, the RBC models that build on the neo-classical growth model do not — as a prototype — model the economic growth.

Data portrays growth

 $\rightarrow$  in order to compare data and model moments, one needs to get rid of the growth in data.

 $\rightarrow$  detrend the data!

-Moments of Model and Data

Filtering the data and model

#### TO PRE-FILTER THE DATA

The idea is to remove certain frequencies of the data

- Seasonal filters remove seasonality
- Hodrick-Prescott filter removes the trend
- Band-pass filter removes chosen frequencies

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Univariate filters

- Hodrick-Prescott filter
- Band-pass filter
- Baxter-King filter
- Beverage-Nelson filter
- Seasonal filters

Multivariate filters

-Moments of Model and Data

Filtering the data and model

#### TO PRE-FILTER OR NOT TO PRE-FILTER

Problems in pre-filtering the data

Do not take into account the restriction by the theoretical model: number of trends, style of trends.

Filtering is subsitute of poor modeling of trends/balanced growth path.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Filtering is never perfect. Leakage.

-Matching moments

# OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments o

5

#### Matching moments

- Calibrating steady-state
- Comparing model and data moments
- GMM

# MATCHING MOMENTS

Moment is a fancy word to describe the statistics we use to compare model and data.

There is no clear guide which moments to match. It may depend on

- purpose of the modeling: policy vs. forecast, ...
- style of the model: for example growth vs. dynamics or both!
- frequency: short-run vs long-run
- . . .

In the previous chapter we had large list of moments. It is easy to invent more!

-Matching moments

# BENEFITS OF CALIBRATION/MOMENT MATCHING

Get aquainted with your model!

< □ > < @ > < E > < E > E のQ@

-Matching moments

Calibrating steady-state

#### OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments of Mod

#### 5 Matching moments

- Calibrating steady-state
- Comparing model and data moments
- GMM

-Matching moments

Calibrating steady-state

#### THREE SETS OF PARAMETERS

We may typically partition the parameters of the theoretical model  $\mu$  into three sets

- Parameters that affect only the steady-state
- Parameters that does not affect steady state but affect dynamics (temporal dependency) of the system

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Parameters that affect both

We may utilize the separation of the sets in calibration.

-Matching moments

Calibrating steady-state

# HOW TO CALIBRATE STEADY-STATE: MOMENTS OF THE STEADY STATE

Consider the first set of parameters, ie parameters that affect only the steady-state.

They can be chosen such as they exactly match

• great ratios in the data: I/K, C/Y, I/Y, (X - M)/Y, ...

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

• average growth rates in the data:  $\Delta y$ ,  $\pi_t$ .

given the chosen parameters of the set 3.

-Matching moments

Calibrating steady-state

# How to do it

You may follow the procedure

- Choose the data and *the sample*!
- Compute the great ratios that can be found from the model too. Plot them to check that they really are stationary
- Compute sample average.
- Solve the steady-state model
  - Compute the same great ratios using steady-state model
  - Try another set of parameter values
- Repeat the above until the distance between great ratios computed from the data and from the model are minimized

Often conflict: Matching certain moment results unmatching other one.

 $\longrightarrow$  try GMM and do it formally (statistically consistent way)

San

Matching moments

-Comparing model and data moments

### OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments of Model

#### Matching moments

- Calibrating steady-state
- Comparing model and data moments
- GMM

5

-Matching moments

-Comparing model and data moments

# CALIBRATING DYNAMICS: MOMENTS OF TEMPORAL DEPENDENCE

These are difficult to calibrate!

You may try the following moments

- Cross-correlations
- Coherence could be useful.
- Impulse response function
  - look the response at impact,
  - the shape,
  - the persistence
  - Identification problem: how to compute the impulse responses we observe in the data. Structural VAR!

Matching moments

-GMM

## OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments of

#### Matching moments

- Calibrating steady-state
- Comparing model and data moments
- GMM

5

<ロト < 団 > < 豆 > < 豆 > < 豆 > < 豆 > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Macroeconometrics
L_Matching moments
GMM

#### The generalized method of moments I

Let  $w_t$  denote the variables we observe at time t and let  $\Theta$  be the unknown parameters of interest. They are related by the function  $h(\Theta, w_t)$ , where the dimension of the function vector is l.

- The orthogonality conditions lies at the hearth of the generalized methods of moments.
- The orthogonality condition says that when evaluated at Θ\* (the true value), the unconditional expections satisfy

$$\mathbf{E}[h(\Theta^*, w_t)] = 0, \tag{30}$$

• The sample mean of these conditions are

$$g(\Theta; w_1, \dots, w_T) \equiv \frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T h(\Theta, w_t),$$

#### THE GENERALIZED METHOD OF MOMENTS II

• The GMM objective function to be minimized is

$$Q(\Theta) = g(\Theta; w_1, \dots, w_T)' Wg(\Theta; w_1, \dots, w_T), \qquad (31)$$

where *W* is the weighting matrix of the orthogonality conditions. Any positive definite matrix is ok, but optimal weighting is obtained by using the covariance matrix of the orthogonality conditions  $S_T$ .

• The estimator of the covariance matrix is the following

$$S = \lim_{T \to \infty} (1/T) \sum_{t=1}^{T} \sum_{v=-\infty}^{\infty} E\left[h(\Theta^*, w_t)h(\Theta^*, w_{t-v})'\right],$$

where  $\Theta^*$  denotes the true value of  $\Theta$ . I have used

• the VARHAC estimator by den Haan and Levin (1996) and

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Macroeconometrics
└─Matching moments
GMM

#### THE GENERALIZED METHOD OF MOMENTS III

- quadratic the spectral kernel estimator by Newey and West (1994) that allow autocorrelation (and heteroscedasticity) in the sample orthogonality conditions.
- If the number of orthogonality conditions, *l*, exceeds the number of parameters, *j*, the model is overidentified. Hansen (1982) shows that it is possible to test the *overidentification restrictions* (*J*-test), since

$$\left[\sqrt{T}g(\hat{\Theta},w_1,\ldots,w_T)\right]'\hat{S}_T^{-1}\left[\sqrt{T}g(\hat{\Theta},w_1,\ldots,w_T)\right] \xrightarrow{d} \chi^2(l-j),$$

where  $\xrightarrow{d}$  denotes convergence in distribution.

- Problems and solutions
  - In the GMM estimation, we encounter the problem of defining the orthogonality conditions (instruments in the typical case).

Macroeconometrics
L_Matching moments
L <sub>GMM</sub>

#### The generalized method of moments IV

- The GMM estimator is different for different set of orthogonality conditions.
- According to the simulation experiments of Tauchen (1986) and Kocherlakota (1990), increasing the number of orthogonality conditions reduces the estimators' variance but increases the bias in small samples.
- In the iteration of the GMM objective (31), follow the guidence of Hansen et al. (1996): Since the weighting matrix in the objective function is also a function of the parameters, it is useful to iterate that as well. This, of course, increases the computational burden.
- Extensions (that follow GMM spirit)
  - Simulated method of moments: extends the generalized method of moments to cases where theoretical moment functions cannot be evaluated directly, such as when moment functions involve high-dimensional integrals.

Macroeconometrics	
L_Matching moments	5

GMM

#### The generalized method of moments V

• Indirect inference: introduce auxiliary model and match the simulated and data moments of the auxialiary model. (Use, eg, VAR as the auxiliary model) If the auxiliary model is correctly specified this is *maximum likelihood*.

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

- Empirical likelihood
- ...

# OUTLINE



Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### OUTLINE



Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### THE STATE SPACE FORM I

In following I follow the notation of Hamilton (1994) and Yada manual but the logic of Harvey (1989, Structural Time Series Models). Harvey's setup is more general than that of Hamilton.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

## THE STATE SPACE FORM II

#### Definition (Measurement equation)

Let  $y_t$  be multivariate time series with n elements. They are observed and related to an  $r \times 1$  state vector  $\xi_t$  via measurement equation

$$y_t = H_t \xi_t + x_t + w_t, \quad t = 1, \dots, T$$
 (32)

where  $H_t$  is an  $n \times r$  matrix,  $x_t$  is  $k \times 1$  vector and  $w_t$  is ab  $n \times 1$  vector of serially uncorrelated disturbances with mean zero and covariance matrix  $R_t$ :

$$E w_t = 0$$
 and  $var(w_t) = R_t$ .

In general the elements of  $\xi_t$  are not observable.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

### THE STATE SPACE FORM III

Definition (Transition equation, state equation)

The state variables  $\xi_t$  are generated by a first-order Markov process

$$\xi_t = F_t \xi_{t-1} + c_t + B_t v_t, \tag{33}$$

where  $F_t$  is an  $r \times r$  matrix,  $c_t$  is an  $r \times 1$  vector,  $B_t$  is an  $m \times g$  matrix and  $v_t$  is a  $g \times 1$  vector of serially uncorrelated disturbances with mean zero and covariance matrix  $Q_t$ , that is

$$E v_t = 0$$
 and  $var(v_t) = Q_t$ .

Assumption

$$\mathrm{E}\,\xi_0 = \hat{\xi}_0 \,and\,\,\mathrm{var}(\xi_0) = P_0$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

### THE STATE SPACE FORM IV

#### Assumption

$$E(w_t v'_k) = 0$$
, for all  $k, t = 1, ..., T$   
 $E(w_t \xi'_0) = 0$ ,  $E(v_t \xi'_0) = 0$  for  $t = 1, ..., T$ 

The first line in above assumption may be relaxed. Matrices  $F_t$ ,  $x_t$ ,  $R_t$ ,  $H_t$ ,  $c_t$ ,  $B_t$  and  $Q_t$  are called *system matrices*. If they do not change over time, the model is said to be *time-invariant* or *time-homogenous*. Stationary models are special case. Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### STATE SPACE FORM AND THE ECONOMIC MODEL

Equation (28) on slide 13 looks familiar:

$$\xi_t = F_0(\mu) + F_1(\mu)\xi_{t-1} + F_{\Gamma}(\mu)v_t,$$
(28)

Redefining  $c_t = F_0(\mu)$  and  $B_t = F_{\Gamma}(\mu)$ , the solution of the economic model is the transition (state) equation of the state space representation of (32) and (33). This makes the state space representation attractive!

With the measurement equation, we are able to map the (theoretical) model variables to actual data!

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

### THE KALMAN FILTER I

#### Definition (The Kalman filter)

The Kalman filter is a recursive procedure for computing the *optimal estimator* of the state vector  $\hat{\zeta}_{t|t}$  at time *t*, based on the information available at time *t*.

Combined with an assumption that the disturbances and the initial state vector are normally distributed, it enables the likelihood function to be calculated via what is known as the prediction error decomposition. The derivation of Kalman filter below rests on that assumption.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### CONDITIONAL MULTIVARIATE NORMAL

# This a sidestep to statistics. We need this result in constructing the Kalman filter!

If  $X \sim N(\mu, \Sigma)$  where  $\mu$  and  $\Sigma$  are mean and covariance of multivariate normal distribution and are partitioned as follows

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mu = \begin{bmatrix} \mu_1 \\ \mu_2 \end{bmatrix}$$
,  $\Sigma = \begin{bmatrix} \Sigma_{11} & \Sigma_{12} \\ \Sigma_{21} & \Sigma_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ 

then the distribution of  $X_1$  conditional on  $X_2 = a$  is multivariate normal, i.e.  $(X_1|X_2 = a) \sim N(\bar{\mu}, \bar{\Sigma})$ , where

$$\bar{\mu} = \mu_1 + \Sigma_{12} \Sigma_{22}^{-1} \left( a - \mu_2 \right)$$

and covariance matrix

$$\overline{\Sigma} = \Sigma_{11} - \Sigma_{12} \Sigma_{22}^{-1} \Sigma_{21}.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# DERIVATION OF THE KALMAN FILTER I

Consider the state space representation of (32) and (33).

Under normality,  $\xi_0$  is multivariate normal with mean  $\hat{\xi}_0$  and covariance  $P_0 = E(\xi_0 - \hat{\xi}_0)(\xi_0 - \hat{\xi}_0)'$ . t = 1

$$\xi_1 = F_1 \xi_0 + c_1 + B_1 v_1$$

 $\longrightarrow$  Due to normality, the conditional expectation of  $\xi_1$  is

$$\hat{\xi}_{1|0} = F_1 \hat{\xi}_0 + c_1$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### DERIVATION OF THE KALMAN FILTER II

and its conditional covariance matrix

$$P_{1|0} = \mathbf{E}(\xi_{1} - \hat{\xi}_{1|0})(\xi_{1} - \hat{\xi}_{1|0})'$$

$$= \mathbf{E}(F_{1}\xi_{0} + c_{1} + B_{1}v_{1} - F_{1}\hat{\xi}_{0} - c_{1})(F_{1}\xi_{0} + c_{1} + B_{1}v_{1} - F_{1}\hat{\xi}_{0} - c_{1})'$$

$$= \mathbf{E}[F_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0}) + B_{1}v_{1}][F_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0}) + B_{1}v_{1}]'$$

$$= \mathbf{E}[F_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0}) + B_{1}v_{1}][(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0})'F'_{1} + v'_{1}B'_{1}]$$

$$= \mathbf{E}[F_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0})(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0})'F'_{1} + F_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0})v'_{1}B'_{1} + B_{1}v_{1}(\xi_{0} - \hat{\xi}_{0})'F'_{1} + B_{1}v_{1}'_{1}B'_{1}]$$

$$= F_{1}P_{0}F'_{1} + B_{1}Q_{1}B'_{1}, \quad (34)$$

since — by assumption — 
$$E(\xi_0 - \hat{\xi}_0)v'_1 = 0$$
.

<ロト < 団 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 > < 三 < つへ ??</p>

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# DERIVATION OF THE KALMAN FILTER III

For the distribution of  $\xi_1$  conditional on  $y_1$  write

$$\begin{split} \xi_1 &= & \hat{\xi}_{1|0} + & (\xi_1 - \hat{\xi}_{1|0}) \\ y_1 &= H_1 & \hat{\xi}_{1|0} + x_1 + H_1 & (\xi_1 - \hat{\xi}_{1|0}) + w_1. \end{split}$$

The second equation is rearranged measurement equation (32).

 $\longrightarrow$  vector  $[\xi'_1 y'_1]'$  is multivariate normal with mean

$$[\hat{\xi}_{1|0}' (H_1 \hat{\xi}_{1|0} + x_1)']'$$

and a covariance

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_{1|0} & P_{1|0}H_1' \\ H_1P_{1|0} & H_1P_{1|0}H_1' + R_1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# DERIVATION OF THE KALMAN FILTER IV

Applying the conditional distribution of multivariate normal to the case:  $\xi_1$  conditional on particular value of  $y_1$  results mean

$$\hat{\xi}_1 = \hat{\xi}_{1|0} + P_{1|0}H_1'S_1^{-1}(y_1 - H_1\hat{\xi}_{1|0} - x_1)$$

and covariance

$$P_1 = P_{1|0} - P_{1|0}H_1'S_1^{-1}H_1P_{1|0},$$

where

$$S_1 = H_1 P_{1|0} H_1' + R_1$$

Iterating this over t = 2, 3, ..., T gives us the Kalman filter!

◆ロト ◆昼 ト ◆ 臣 ト ◆ 臣 ト ◆ 回 ト ◆ 回 ト

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# THE KALMAN FILTER I

Consider, again, the state space representation of (32) and (33).

Define  $\hat{\xi}_{t-1}$  denotes the optimal estimator of  $\xi_{t-1}$  based on the observations up to and including  $y_{t-1}$ .  $P_{t-1}$  denotes the  $r \times r$  covariance matrix of the estimations error

$$P_{t-1} = \mathbf{E} \left[ (\xi_{t-1} - \hat{\xi}_{t-1}) (\xi_{t-1} - \hat{\xi}_{t-1})' \right]$$

Prediction equations Given  $\hat{\xi}_{t-1}$  and  $P_{t-1}$ , the optimal estimator of  $\xi_t$  is given by

$$\hat{\xi}_{t|t-1} = F_t \hat{\xi}_{t-1} + c_t$$

and the covariance matrix of estimation error is

$$P_{t|t-1} = F_t P_{t-1} F'_t + B_t Q_t B'_{t'_{\Box}} + \frac{1}{2} \prod_{i=1}^{2} \frac{1}{2} \prod_{$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

### THE KALMAN FILTER II

Updating equations Once the new observation  $y_t$  becomes available, the estimator  $\hat{\zeta}_{t|t-1}$  of  $\zeta_t$  can be updated

$$\hat{\xi}_t = \hat{\xi}_{t|t-1} + P_{t|t-1}H_1'S_t^{-1}(y_t - H_t\hat{\xi}_{t|t-1} - x_t)$$

and

$$P_t = P_{t|t-1} - P_{t|t-1}H_t'S_t^{-1}H_tP_{t|t-1},$$

where

$$S_t = H_t P_{t|t-1} H_t' + R_t$$

▲□▶ ▲□▶ ▲ 三▶ ▲ 三▶ - 三 - のへぐ

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# THE KALMAN FILTER III

The equations in these two slides make up the Kalman filter. They can be written in the single set of recursion from  $\hat{\xi}_{t-1}$  to  $\hat{\xi}_t$  or from  $\hat{\xi}_{t|t-1}$  as follows

$$\hat{\xi}_{t+1|t} = (F_{t+1} - K_t H_t) \hat{\xi}_{t|t-1} + K_t y_t + (c_{t+1} - K_t x_t),$$

where the Kalman gain is given by

$$K_t = F_{t+1}P_{t|t-1}H_t'S_t^{-1}, \quad t = 1, \dots, T.$$

The recursion for the error covariance matrix is

$$P_{t+1|t} = F_{t+1}(P_{t|t-1} - P_{t|t-1}H_t'S_t^{-1}H_tP_{t|t-1})F_{t+1}' + B_{t+1}Q_{t+1}B_{t+1}', t = 1,$$

It is know as a Riccati equation.
Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

ISSUES I

- The state space representation and Kalman filter tells nothing how to interpret the state variables ζ<sub>t</sub>. Economic model does tell! Its elements may or may not be identifiable.
- Same economic model may have several state space representations. The one that has smallest state vector is called *minimal realisation*.
- Sometimes transition equation is written in the form where state variables are leaded with one period.
- The system matrices  $F_t$ ,  $R_t$ ,  $H_t$ ,  $B_t$  and  $Q_t$  may depend on a set of unknown parameters, and one of the main statistical tasks will often be the estimation of these parameters.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

• Given initial conditions, the Kalman filter delivers the optimal estimator of the state vector.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# ISSUES II

٠

- *Information filter* is a version of the Kalman filter, where the recursion involves  $P^{-1}$ . This is handy when  $P_0$  is infinite or when system matrices are time-varying.
- *Square root filter* is the one where *P* is obtained via Cholesky decomposition. It is known to be numerically stable.

$$\hat{\xi} = \mathrm{E}_t(\xi_t) = \mathrm{E}(\xi|Y_t)$$

and

$$P_t = \mathbf{E}_t \left\{ \left[ \xi_t - \mathbf{E}_t(\xi_t) \right] \left[ \xi_t - \mathbf{E}_t(\xi_t) \right]' \right\}$$

Hence, the conditional mean is the *minimum mean square estimate* of  $\xi_t$ .

The conditional mean can also be regarded as an estimator of ξ<sub>t</sub>. Hence it applies to any set of observations. It is also *minimum mean square estimator* of ξ<sub>t</sub>.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# ISSUES III

- In the above case *P<sub>t</sub>* can be considered as the the *mean square error* (MSE) matrix of the estimator.
- For *time invariant* model the necessary and sufficient condition for *stability* is that the characteristic roots of the transition matrix *F* should have modulus less than one.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# MAXIMUM LIKELIHOOD ESTIMATION AND THE PREDICTION ERROR DECOMPOSITION I

Classical theory of maximun likelihood estimation is based on a situation in which the *T* sets of observations,  $y_1, \ldots, y_T$  are independently and identically distributed. The joint density function is given by

$$L(y;\phi) = \prod_{t=1}^{T} p(y_t),$$

where  $p(y_t)$  is the joint probability density function (p.d.f.) of the *t*-th set of observations. Once the observations have been made,  $L(y; \phi)$  is reinterpreted as a likelihood function and the ML estimator is found by maximizing this function wrt  $\phi$ .

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# MAXIMUM LIKELIHOOD ESTIMATION AND THE PREDICTION ERROR DECOMPOSITION II

In time series or economic models observations are typically not independent. We write instead the conditional probability density function

$$L(y;\phi) = \prod_{t=1}^{T} p(y_t|Y_{t-1}),$$

where  $Y_{t-1} = \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{t-1}\}.$ 

If the disturbances  $v_t$  and  $w_t$  and initial state vector  $\xi_0$  are multivariate normal,  $p(y_t|Y_{t-1})$  is itself normal with the mean and covariance given by Kalman filter.

• Conditionally  $Y_{t-1}$ ,  $\xi_t \sim N(\hat{\xi}_{t|t-1}, P_{t|t-1})$ .

・ロト・(四ト・(川下・(日下))

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# MAXIMUM LIKELIHOOD ESTIMATION AND THE PREDICTION ERROR DECOMPOSITION III

• From the measurement equation

$$\tilde{y}_{t|t-1} \equiv \mathcal{E}_{t-1}(y_t) = H_t \hat{\xi}_{t|t-1} + x_t$$

with covariance matrix  $S_t$ .

• Define 
$$\tilde{v}_t = y_t - E_{t-1}y_t = y_t - \tilde{y}_{t|t-1}$$

Then the likelihood can be written as

$$\log L = -\frac{nT}{2}\log 2\pi - \frac{1}{2}\sum_{t=1}^{T}\log|S_t| - \frac{1}{2}\sum_{t=1}^{T}\tilde{v}_t'S_t^{-1}\tilde{v}_t.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# MAXIMUM LIKELIHOOD ESTIMATION AND THE PREDICTION ERROR DECOMPOSITION IV

- Since \$\tilde{y}\_{t|t-1}\$ is also the MMSE of \$y\_t\$, \$\tilde{v}\_t\$ can be interpreted as vector of *prediction errors*. The above likelihood is, therefore, called *prediction error decomposition* form of the likelihood.
- Consequently, the likelihood function may easily computed with Kalman filter.
- And numerically maximized wrt unknown parameter  $\phi$ .

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# ML ISSUES I

- The limiting distribution of the ML estimator of *φ* is normal with covariance matrix obtained as the inverse of the information matrix
  - $\phi$  has to be interior point
  - derivatives of log *L* exists up to order three, and they are continuous in the neighbourhood of true  $\phi$
  - $\phi$  is identifiable
- In nonstationary models, the influence of the initial point does not vanish. No steady-state point exists. Then, the KF has to be initialized using first observations and "large" matrix *P*<sub>0</sub>. This is called *diffuse prior*.
- Forecasting is easy. Multistep forecast may be obtained by applying KF prediction equations repeteadly. Note:  $P_{T+j|T}$  do not take into account the uncertainty related to estimating unknown parameters.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# Smoothing

Filtering is prediction/forecasting. In smoothing we want to know the distribution of  $\xi_t$  conditional on all the smaple, ie  $E(\xi_t|Y_T)$ .

- it is known as *smoothed estimate*
- and the corresponding estimator as smoother
- several algorithms: fixed point, fixed lag, fixed interval

Covariance matrix of  $\xi_{t|T}$  conditional on all *T* observations

$$P_{t|T} = \mathbf{E}_T \left[ (\xi_t - \hat{\xi}_{t|T}) (\xi_t - \hat{\xi}_{t|T})' \right]$$

when  $\hat{\xi}_{t|T}$  is viewed as an estimator,  $P_{t|T} \leq P_t$  (t = 1, ..., T) is its MSE matrix.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

#### FIXED-INTERVAL SMOOTHING

Starts with final quantities  $\hat{\xi}_T$  and  $P_T$  of the Kalman filter and work backwards

$$\hat{\xi}_{t|T} = \hat{\xi}_t + P_t^{\star}(\hat{\xi}_{t+1|T} - F_{t+1}\hat{\xi}_t)$$

and

$$P_{t|T} = P_t + P_t^{\star} (P_{t+1|T} - P_{t+1|t}) P_t^{\star'}$$

where

$$P_t^{\star} = P_t F_{t+1}' P_{t+1|t}^{-1}$$
  $t = T - 1, \dots, 1$ 

with  $\hat{\xi}_{T|T} = \hat{\xi}_T$  and  $P_{T|T} = P_T$ .

・ロト (四) (日) (日) (日) (日) (日)

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# IDENTIFICATION I

Based on Andrle (2010)

- Fundamental issue in economic and statistical modeling.
- Easily acute in state space models.
- *Y* set of observations
- *Model:* distribution for the variable in question.
- *S structure*, ie parameters of that distribution, ie complete probability specification of *Y* of the form

$$S=F(Y,\theta),$$

where  $\theta \in \Theta \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is the vector of parameters that belongs to parameters space  $\Theta$ .

• *Observational equivalence:* two structures,  $S^0 = F(Y, \theta^0)$  and  $S^* = F(Y, \theta^*)$ , having the same joint density function, ie if  $F(Y, \theta^0) = F(Y, \theta^*)$  for almost all *Y*.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

## IDENTIFICATION II

- A structure is identifiable if the exists no other observationally equivalent structure, ie θ<sup>0</sup> = θ<sup>\*</sup>.
- A model is identifiable if all its possible structures are identifiable. If no structure is identifiable, the model is said to be *underidentified*.
- *Local identification:* the structure is locally identified if there exists an open neighbourhood of  $\theta^0$  containing no other  $\theta \in \Theta$ , which produces observationally equivalent structure.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

# IDENTIFICATION III

#### Theorem (Rotemberg, 1971)

Subject to some regularity conditions,  $\theta^0$  is locally identified for a given structure if and only if the Information matrix evaluated at  $\theta^0$  is not singular.

Equation

$$T(\theta,\tau)=0$$

defines the mapping between the *reduced form parameters*  $\tau \in \mathcal{T} \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  and *structural parameters*  $\theta$ . If reduced form parameters are (locally) identified, the necessary and sufficient condition for identification is that

$$T \equiv \frac{\partial T}{\partial \theta'}$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Kalman filter and the maximum likelihood

## IDENTIFICATION IV

is of full rank.

#### Bayesian perspective

"Identification is a property of likelihood" and, hence, it the Bayesian approach makes no difference. Unidentification affect large sample inference and frequency properties of Bayesian inference since likelihood does not dominate prior as the sample size grows.

Data may be marginally informative even for conditionally inidentified parameter and marginal posterior and prior densities may differ.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Filtering and decompositions

### OUTLINE

#### Introduction

- 2 Difference equations and lag operators
- 3 Approximating and Solving DSGE Models

Moments of Model and D



Filtering and Likelihood approach

Filtering and decompositions

#### **APPLICATIONS**

The KF opens up many applications even within the context of DSGE models

- Missing observations
- Different frequencies for different variables, eg quarterly, annually, live happily together

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

• Different vintages of data

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

#### OUTLINE



Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# FEATURES OF THE MAXIMUM LIKELIHOOD ESTIMATION

- Takes probability distribution generated by the DSGE model very seriously
- Maximum likelihood works well if the misspecification of the DSGE model is small. However, likelihood-based analysis potentially very sensitive to misspecification. State space models are not the best setup to recover misspecification.
- As stressed above, it there is a lack of identification, the likelihood function will be flat in certain directions.
- In practice, likelihood function tends to be multi-modal, difficult to maximize, and often peaks in regions of the parameters space in which the model is hard to interpret.
- $\longrightarrow$  fix subset of parameters.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

#### BAYESIAN INFERENCE IN A NUTSHELL

- Parameter is a random variable!
- Combine prior distribution of the structural parameters with likelihood function
  - This prior density can contain information from other sources than the current data.
- Use Bayesian theorem to update the prior density by calculating conditional distribution of the parameters given the data (posterior distribution)
- Inference and decisions are then based on this posterior distribution

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─ Bayesian methods

#### NUTSHELL OF A NUTSHELL

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)}$$

<□> < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ >

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# INTRODUCTION I

- Structural models have interest parameterization in the sense that we may have *a priori* information from
  - microeconometric studies;
  - studies from other fields
  - other countries' data
  - •
- Bayesians love this since prior information has an essential role in Bayesian inference.
- Bayesians interprete parameters as random variables.
- Objective is to make conditional probabilistic statements regarding the parameterization of the model:
  - structure of the model (model specification)
  - 2 the observed data
  - prior distribution of the parameters.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# INTRODUCTION II

- Likelihood is 1. plus 2.
- Combining likelihood and 3. using Bayes' rule yields an associated posterior distribution.
- Data speaks in likelihood and the researcher speaks in prior distribution.

The incorporation of prior information is not what distinguishes classical ("frequentist") from Bayesian analysis; the distinguishing feature is the probabilistic interpretation assigned to parameters under the Bayesian perspective.

• We may interprete calibration as a Bayesian analysis involving very, very strict prior (probability mass concentrated on a single point).

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

## INTRODUCTION III

• By choosing *a diffuse prior* we may let data to speak as much as possible.

Objectives in using Bayesian procedures in DSGEs

- Implement DSGEs as a source of prior information regarding the parameterization of reduced form models (like VAR).
- Facilitate direct estimation of the parameters of DSGEs and to implement estimated models to pursuit different tasks.
- To facilitate model comparisons. Posterior odds analysis. Works also for false and non-nested models.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES I

Notation:

- A structural model
- $\mu$  vector of parameters, primary focus of analysis
- $\Lambda(\mu)$  parameters of state space representation, no (extra) identification problem here. This is the model's solution.
  - X sample of observations
- $L(X|\mu, A)$  likelihood function
  - $L(X|\mu)$  likelihood function if A is clear/granted
    - $\pi(\mu)$  prior distribution of  $\mu$
  - $p(X, \mu)$  joint probability of X and  $\mu$ 
    - p(X) probability of X.

Classical (frequentist) view

• parameters are fixed, but unknown objects

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES II

- likelihood function is a sampling distribution for the data
- *X* is one of many possible realizations from *L*(*X*|*µ*) that could have obtained.
- Inference regarding μ center on statements regarding probabilities associated with the particular observation of X for given values of μ.

Bayesian view

- *X* taken as given.
- inference interested in alternative specification of  $\mu$  conditional on *X*.
- This probabilistic interpretation of  $\mu$  gives rise to incorporate prior information on  $\mu$ .
- This is facilitated by the prior distribution for *μ*, denoted by *π*(*μ*).

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES III

How to incorporate prior information

• Calculate joint probability of (*X*, *µ*) with the help of conditional and unconditional distribution

$$p(X,\mu) = L(X|\mu)\pi(\mu)$$

or reversing the role

$$p(X,\mu) = p(\mu|X)p(X)$$

- In the first equation the likelihood function L(X|μ) has the role of conditional probability and conditioning is made wrt μ.
- In the second equation conditioning is wrt *X*.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

### PRELIMINARIES IV

• Get rid of the joint probability by equating those two:

$$p(\mu|X)p(X) = L(X|\mu)\pi(\mu).$$

• Solving for  $p(\mu|X)$  gives Bayes' rule:

$$p(\mu|X) = \frac{L(X|\mu)\pi(\mu)}{p(X)} \propto L(X|\mu)\pi(\mu).$$

- The ∝ is because *p*(*X*) is a constant from the point of view of the distribution of *μ*.
- $p(\mu|X)$  is now the posterior distribution.
- Conditional on X and the prior π(μ) it assigns probabilities to alternative values of μ.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES V

Bayesian analysis typically involves calcualting the conditional expected value of a function of the parameters g(µ):

$$\mathbf{E}[g(\mu)] = \frac{\int g(\mu) P(\mu|\mathbf{X}) d\mu}{\int P(\mu|\mathbf{X})},$$

where the denominator  $\int P(\mu|X)$  exists to handle the missing p(X) in the Bayes' rule.

- Examples of  $g(\mu)$ 
  - Identitity function would result posterior mean.
  - $g(\mu) = 1$  for  $\mu^j \in [\mu^j, \bar{\mu}^j)$ , and 0 other wise: If repeated to each element in  $\mu$  would enable to construction of *marginal predictive density functions* (p.d.f.:s) for each  $\mu_i$ . Here Marginal means that the p.d.f. is unconditional on the other elements of  $\mu$ .
  - marginal p.d.f. of spectra

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES VI

- marginal p.d.f. of impulse response functions
- marginal p.d.f. of predictive densities
- marginal p.d.f. of unobserved shock processes
- marginal p.d.f. of forecasts!
- Hence, E[g(μ)] is the weighted average of g(μ) where weights are given by posterior distribution P(μ|X), ie by data (likelihood function) and the prior.
- Rarely  $E[g(\mu)]$  can be calculated analytically  $\longrightarrow$  *numerical integration*.

Numerical integration

- Suppose we may draw directly from  $P(\mu|X)$
- we, naturally, know  $g(\mu)$
- Let's do Monte Carlo integration:

for i=1:N% where N is a large number like 10000

• draw  $\mu_i$  (one realization) from  $P(\mu|X)$ 

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

# PRELIMINARIES VII

2 compute g(µi)
3 store it to a vector
end
compute the average.

• Typically you may do this without loops by using vector/matrix operations, eg

```
gN = mean(g(randmu(N)))
```

• By law of large numbers

$$\bar{g}_N = rac{1}{N} \sum_i^N g(\mu_i) \xrightarrow{p} \mathrm{E}(g(\mu)],$$

where  $\xrightarrow{p}$  means convergence in probability.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Bayesian methods

### PRELIMINARIES VIII

• Std $(\bar{g}_N)$  is given by

$$\operatorname{std}(\bar{g}_N) = \frac{\sigma(g(\mu))}{\sqrt{N}}.$$

and its sample (simulated) counterpart

$$ar{\sigma}_N[g(\mu)] = \left[rac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^N g(\mu_i)^2 - ar{g}_N^2
ight]^2.$$

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

Marginal p.d.f. of g(µ) may obtained from the draws of g(µ) by kernel methods.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Simulating posterior

#### OUTLINE



Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

# IMPLEMENTING DSGEs

- Typically posterior distribution  $p(\mu|X)$  is not directly (analytically) available.
  - likelihood is available for  $\Lambda(\mu)$ , whereas
  - priors are specified in terms  $\mu$ .
- We can calculate *p*(μ<sup>\*</sup>|X) for given value of μ<sup>\*</sup> with the help of the likelihood function *L*(*X*|μ<sup>\*</sup>, *A*) (ie with Kalman filter).
- The last problem is to define from where to draw  $\mu_i$  such that the procedure will be
  - accurate
  - efficient
- DeJong and Dave (2007) studies
  - Importance sampling
  - MCMC: Gibbs
  - MCMC: Metropolis-Hastings

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

## MARKOV CHAIN SIMULATIONS I

A Markov chain is a sequence of random variables, such that the probability distribution of any one, given all preceding realizations, depend on the immediately preceding realization. Hence,  $\{x_i\}$  has the property

$$\Pr(x_{i+1}|x_i, x_{i-1}, x_{i-2}, \dots) = \Pr(x_{i+1}|x_i)$$

Here *i* refers to Monte Carlo replication.

- *x<sub>i</sub>* can take one of *n* possible values, which collectively defines the state space over *x*
- Movements of x<sub>i</sub> over i is characterized via P, an n × n transition matrix. Hence, a Markov chain can be fully described by its initial state and a rule describing how the chain moves from its state in i to a state in i + 1.
- $p_{qr}$  is the (q, r)<sup>th</sup> element of *P*:

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### MARKOV CHAIN SIMULATIONS II

- it is the probability that  $x_i$  will transition to state r in replication i + 1 given its current state q.
- $q^{\text{th}}$  row of *P* is the conditional probability distribution for  $x_{i+1}$  given the current state *q* in replication *i*

The posterior distribution is not standard. The idea of Markov Chain Monte Carlo is to construct a stochastic process (Markov Chain), such that:

- it has stationary distribution
- it converges to that stationary distribution
- the stationary distribution is the target distribution, ie the posterior distribution  $p(\mu|X)$ . (ergodic distribution)

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

#### MARKOV CHAIN SIMULATIONS III

 $\rightarrow$  construct a Markov chain in  $\mu$ , ie the transition matrix P, such that the process converges to the posterior distribution. The 'process' here is the sequence of draws, ie the simulations. *Metropolis* algorithm creates a sequence of random points ( $\mu_1, \mu_2, ...$ ) whose distribution converges to  $p(\mu|X)$ .
Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### **PROPOSAL DISTRIBUTION**

Let  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)$  be a *stand-in density* (*proposal distribution* or *jumping distribution*), where  $\theta$  represents the parameterization of this density.

 Ideally ι(μ|μ<sub>i-1</sub>, θ) should have fat tails relative to posterior: algorithm should visit all parts of the posterior distribution.

▲ロト ▲ 理 ト ▲ 王 ト ▲ 王 - の Q (~

• center  $\mu_{i-1}$  and "rotation"  $\theta$  should different from posterior.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Simulating posterior

### METROPOLIS ALGORITHM I

Let  $\mu_i^*$  denote a draw from  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)$ . It is a *candidate* to become next *successful*  $\mu_i$ . Calculate the ratio of the densities

$$r = \frac{p(\mu_i^\star | X)}{p(\mu_{i-1} | X)}.$$

Set

$$\mu_i = \begin{cases} \mu_i^{\star} & \text{with probability } \min(r, 1) \\ \mu_{i-1} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### METROPOLIS ALGORITHM II

•  $p(\mu_i^*|X) < p(\mu_{i-1}|X)$ 

 $\longrightarrow \mu_i^*$  not always included; the lower  $p(\mu_i^*|X)$ , the lower the chance it is included.

Given the current value  $\mu_{i-1}$ , the Markov chain transition distribution  $p_{\mu_{i-1},\mu_i}$  is a mixture of the jumping distribution  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1},\theta)$  and a point mass at  $\mu_i = \mu_{i-1}$ . Note! If  $\mu_i = \mu_{i-1}$ , ie the jump is not accepted, this counts as an iteration in the algorithm.

The algorithm can be viewed as a stochastic version of a stepwise mode-finding algorithm: always stepping to increase the density but only sometimes stepping to decrease. This is the idea in simulated annealing algorithm.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### Why does the Metropolis Algorithm work? I

The proof of the convergence to the target distribution has two steps:

- Show that the simulated sequence (µ1, µ2,...) is a Markov chain with a unique stationary distribution: holds if the Markov chain is irreducible, aperiodic, and not transient → hold if the jumping distribution is chosen such that it covers all possible states with positive probability → has fat tails.
- Show that the stationary distribution is the target distribution.

To proof the second part:

• Suppose  $\mu_{i-1}$  a draw from the target distribution  $p(\mu|X)$ .

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

### WHY DOES THE METROPOLIS ALGORITHM WORK? II

- Consider two draws,  $\mu_a$  and  $\mu_b$ , from the target distribution such that  $p(\mu_b|X) \ge p(\mu_a|X)$ .
- The unconditional transitional probability from  $\mu_a$  to  $\mu_b$  is

$$p_{\mu_a\mu_b} = p(\mu_a|X)\iota(\mu_b|\mu_a,\theta) \times 1,$$

where the acceptance probability is 1 (because  $p(\mu_b|X) \ge p(\mu_a|X)$ ).

• The unconditional transitional probability from  $\mu_b$  to  $\mu_a$ 

$$p_{\mu_b\mu_a} = p(\mu_b|X)\iota(\mu_a|\mu_b,\theta)\frac{p(\mu_a|X)}{p(\mu_b|X)}$$
$$= p(\mu_a|X)\iota(\mu_a|\mu_b,\theta)$$

They are *the same*, because we have assumed that *ι*(·|·, θ) is symmetric.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

### WHY DOES THE METROPOLIS ALGORITHM WORK? III

- Since the joint distribution is symmetric, μ<sub>i</sub> and μ<sub>i-1</sub> have the same marginal distributions, and so
- $p(\mu|X)$  is the stationary distribution of the Markov chain.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### METROPOLIS-HASTING ALGORITHM I

Let  $\mu_i^*$  denote a draw from  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)$ . It is a *candidate* to become next *successful*  $\mu_i$ .

It has the following probability to become successful:

$$q(\mu_i^*|\mu_{i-1}) = \min\left[1, \frac{p(\mu_i^*|X) / \iota(\mu_i^*|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)}{p(\mu_{i-1}|X) / \iota(\mu_{i-1}|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)}\right]$$

This probability can be simulated as follows

- draw  $\mho$  from uniform distribution over [0, 1].
- if  $q(\mu_i^*|\mu_{i-1}) > \mho$  then  $\mu_i = \mu_i^*$  else redraw new candidate  $\mu_i^*$  from  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)$ .

Note that if  $\iota(\mu|\theta) = p(\mu|X) q(\mu_i^*|\mu_{i-1}) = 1$ . Finally,  $E[g(\mu)]$  can be calculated usual way using sequence of *accepted* draws. Two variants:

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

**METROPOLIS-HASTING ALGORITHM II** • independence chain:  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta) = \iota(\mu|\theta)$ . • random walk MH: candidate draws

$$\mu_i^\star = \mu_{i-1} + \varepsilon_i$$

then stand-in density evolves

$$\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1},\theta)=\iota(\mu-\mu_{i-1}|\theta),$$

so that the center (mean) of  $\iota(\mu|\mu_{i-1}, \theta)$  evolves over Monte Carlo replications following a random walk.

Choosing the stand-in distribution:

 The "quality" of stand-in distribution helps in convergence. It should be as close as possible to posterior distribution.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### METROPOLIS-HASTING ALGORITHM III

- Natural candidate: ML estimates of the parameters  $\mu$  follow asymptotically multivariate Normal distribution  $N(\hat{\mu}, \Sigma)$ .
- Since we want to be sure to have fatter tails, lets scale the covariance matrix:

$$N(\hat{\mu}, c^2 \Sigma)$$

This would be our first draw from stand-in density, ie  $\iota(\mu_0^*|\theta)$ .

• Random walk Metropolis-Hastings would involve

$$\iota(\mu-\mu_{i-1}|\theta)=N(\mu_{i-1},c^{2}\Sigma).$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### METROPOLIS-HASTING ALGORITHM IV

# Acceptance rate = $\frac{\text{accepted draws}}{\text{all draws}}$

Optimal acceptance rate is 0.44 for a model with one parameter and 0.23 if there more than *five* parameters.

This guides us in choosing *c* (the scale factor of the asymptotic covariance matrix):

- start with  $c = 2.4 / \sqrt{\text{number of parameters}}$ .
- Increase (decrease) *c* if the acceptance rate is too high (low).

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS I

In the ML estimation the problems related to likelihood (eg identification, or the model specification in general) show typically up as numerical problem in maximizing the likelihood.

In Bayesian estimation they show up in the MCMC. Fundamental questions is the convergence of the chain(s):

- Is the target distribution achieved?
- What is the impact of the starting values of the chain?
- Are blocks of draws correlated?

Partial solutions to possible problem

• Remember that this is not standard Monte Carlo where 10 000 replication is a big number. Here it is million (Markov chain)

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS II

- Throw away early iterations of each MCMC chain. Even 50 %
- Asses the convergence
  - Plot the raw draws, ie parameter value against draw: if they are trending, there is a trouble.
  - Plot multiple chains to the same graph: are they in the same region.
  - Plot:

$$\frac{1}{n_s}\sum_{s=1}^{n_s}g(\mu^{(s)})$$

as a function of  $n_s$ .

• start Markov chain at extreme values of  $\mu$  and check whether different runs of the chain settle to the same distribution

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

### MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS III

- Simulate multiple chains: Look, among other things, whether the moments of a single parameter μ(j) are similar across the chains
- Compute test statistics that measure *variation within a chain* and *between the chains*.
- These test statistic builds on the classical test set-ups that try to detect structural breaks.

Testing the structural change, ie convergence.

- Cusum-type of tests of structural change (see Yu and Mykland (1998) or Yada manual)
- Partial means test by Geweke (2005) splits the chain into groups:

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

### MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS IV

• *N* is number of draws,  $N_p = N/(2p)$ , where *p* is positive integer. Define *p* separated partial means

$$\hat{S}_{j,p}^{(N)} = rac{1}{N_p} \sum_{m=1}^{N_p} S(\mu^{(m+N_p(2j-1))}), \quad j=1,\ldots,p$$

where *S* is some summary statistic of the parameters  $\mu$  (eg original parameters). Let  $\hat{\tau}_{j,p}$  be the Newey-West (1987) numerical standard error for j = 1, ..., p. Define the (p - 1) vector  $\hat{S}_p^{(N)}$  with typical element  $\hat{S}_{j+1,p}^{(N)} - \hat{S}_{j,p}^{(N)}$  and the  $(p-1) \times (p-1)$  tridiagonal matrix  $\hat{V}_p^{(N)}$  where

$$\hat{V}_{j,j}^{(N)} = \hat{\tau}_{j,p}^2 + \hat{\tau}_{j+1,p}^2, \quad j = 1, \dots, p-1$$

and

$$\hat{V}_{j,j+1}^{(N)} = \hat{V}_{j+1,j}^{(N)} = \hat{\tau}_{j+1,p'}^2, \quad j = 1, \dots, p-1.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

## MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS V

The statistic

$$G_p^{(N)} = \left(\hat{S}_p^{(N)}\right)' [\hat{V}_p^{(N)}]^{-1} \hat{S}_p^{(N)} \xrightarrow{d} \chi^2(p-1),$$

as  $N \rightarrow \infty$  under the null that the MCMC chain has converged with the separated partial means being equal.

### • Multiple chain diagnostics

- i = 1, ..., N chain length; j = 1, ..., M number of chains.
- Between chain variance is

$$B = \frac{N}{M-1} \sum_{j=1}^{M} (\bar{S}_j - \bar{S})^2,$$

where

$$\bar{S}_j = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N S_{ij} \quad \bar{S} = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{j=1}^M \bar{S}_j.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

#### MARKOV CHAIN DIAGNOSTICS VI and within chain variance

$$W = \frac{1}{M(N-1)} \sum_{j=1}^{M} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (S_{ij} - \bar{S}_j)^2.$$

• Define variance of S

$$\hat{\Sigma}_S = \frac{N-1}{N}W + \frac{1}{N}B,$$

and

$$\hat{V} = \hat{\Sigma}_S + \frac{B}{MN}.$$

• The potential scale reduction factor  $\hat{R}$  should decline to 1 if simulation converges

$$\hat{R} = \sqrt{\frac{\hat{V}}{W}} = \sqrt{\frac{N-1}{N} + \frac{(M+1)B}{MNW}}.$$

Filtering and Likelihood approach

Simulating posterior

### CHOOSING PRIOR DISTRIBUTION I

Think carefully:

- What is the domain?
- Is it bounded?
- Shape of distribution: symmetric, skewed, which side?

How to choose prior:

- The choice of a prior distribution for a deep parameter often follows directly from assumptions made in the DSGE model.
- Results from other studies (Microstudies or DSGE estimates) are already available.
  - Pre-sample.
  - Other countries and data sets
  - NOT the data you are currently using the estimation.
- Should not be too restrictive allow for a wide support.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Simulating posterior

### CHOOSING PRIOR DISTRIBUTION II

Most common distributions employed are:

- Beta distribution; range is ∈ (*p*<sub>1</sub>, *p*<sub>2</sub>); autoregressive parameters ∈ (0, 1)
- Gamma distribution; range is  $\in (p_1, \infty)$ ;
- Normal distribution
- Uniform distribution; range is  $\in (p_1, p_2)$ ; diffuse priors
- Inverted-gamma distribution; range is  $\mathbb{R}^+$ ; variances

Yada manual has nice plots of the distributions.

Look at the model moments implied by priors!

Sensitivity analysis: how robust are the results to choice of prior?

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Model comparison

### OUTLINE



ヘロト 人間 とく ヨン くきとう

= 900

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON I

Posterior distribution can be used to assess conditional probabilities associated with alternative model specifications. This lies at the heart of the Bayesian approach to model comparison.

Relative conditional probabilities are calculated using *odds ratio*.

- Two models: *A* and *B* with corresponding parameter vectors that may differ  $\mu_A$  and  $\mu_B$ .
- Study model *A* (and change the symbols to study the model *B*).

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON II

• Posterior (conditional on the model *A*)

$$p(\mu_A|X,A) = \frac{L(X|\mu_A,A)\pi(\mu_A|A)}{p(X|A)}$$

Integrate both sides by  $\mu_A$  (ie calculate the marginal probabilities; ie average over the all possible parameter values) to have

$$p(X|A) = \int L(X|\mu_A, A)\pi(\mu_A|A)d\mu_A.$$

This is the marginal likelihood of model *A*.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON III

• Use Bayes' rule to calculate conditional probability associated with model *A*:

$$p(A|X) = \frac{p(X|A)\pi(A)}{p(X)}$$

(use the similar logic as in the start of the section, ie define joint probability of data and model (X, A).

• Substitute the marginal likelihood into the above equation

$$p(A|X) = \frac{\left[\int L(X|\mu_A, A)\pi(\mu_A|A)d\mu_A\right]\pi(A)}{p(X)}$$

< □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON IV

Look at the ratio of the above conditional density to that of the model *B*. This is called **posterior odds ratio**:

$$PO_{A,B} = \underbrace{\frac{\left[\int L(X|\mu_A, A)\pi(\mu_A|A)d\mu_A\right]}{\left[\int L(X|\mu_B, B)\pi(\mu_B|B)d\mu_B\right]}}_{\text{Bayes factor}} \underbrace{\frac{\pi(A)}{\pi(B)}}_{\text{prior odds ratio}}$$

Beauty of this approach

- all models are treated symmetrically; no "null hypothesis"
- all models can be false
- works equally well for non-nested models

Hence, favour the model whose marginal likelihood is larger:

- Odds  $\in (1-3)$  "very slight evidence" in favour of A
- Odds  $\in$  (3 10) "slight evidence" in favour of *A*

Filtering and Likelihood approach

└─Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON V

- Odds ∈ (10 − 100) "strong to very strong evidence" in favour of A
- Odds > 100 "decisive evidence" in favour of *A*

Implementation is tough, because we need to integrate the parameters out.

Easy solution would be to assume functional form to marginal likelihood. *Laplace approximation* utilizes Gaussian large sample properties

$$\hat{p}(X|A) = (2\pi)^{\frac{T}{2}} |\Sigma_{\mu_A^m}|^{\frac{1}{2}} p(\mu_A^m|X,A) p(\mu_A^m|A),$$

where  $\mu_A^m$  is the *posterior mode*, ie the initial (ML estimated) value of the parameters in stand-in distribution.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Model comparison

### MODEL COMPARISON VI

Harmonic mean estimator is based on the following idea:

$$\mathbf{E}\left[\frac{f(\mu_A)}{p(\mu_A|A)p(X|\mu_A,A)}|\mu_A,A\right] = \frac{\int f(\mu_A)d\mu_A}{\int p(\mu_A|A)p(X|\mu_A,A)d\mu_A} = p(X|A)^{-1}$$

where f is a probability density function. This suggest the following estimator of the marginal density

$$\hat{p}(X|A) = \left[\frac{1}{B}\sum_{b=1}^{B} \frac{f(\mu_{A}^{b})}{p(\mu_{A}^{b}|A)p(X|\mu_{A}^{b},A)}\right]^{-1},$$

where  $\mu_A^b$  is a draw of  $\mu_A$  in Metropolis-Hastings iteration. Typically *f* is replaced by a truncated normal, this estimator is then called by modified harmonic mean estimator.

Filtering and Likelihood approach

-Model comparison

### References

Anderson, Gary, and George Moore (1985) 'A linear algebraic procedure for solving linear perfect foresight models.' *Economics Letters* 17(3), 247–252

- Andrle, Michal (2010) 'A note on identification patterns in DSGE models.' Working Paper Series 1235, European Central Bank, August
- Blanchard, Olivier J., and C. Kahn (1980) 'Solution of linear difference models under rational expectations.' *Econometrica* 38, 1305–1311

DeJong, David N., and Chetan Dave (2007) *Structural Macroeconometrics* (Princeton and Oxford: Princeton University Press)

den Haan, Wouter J., and Andrew Levin (1996) 'A practioner's guide to robust covariance matrix estimation.' Discussion Paper 96-17, University of California, San Diego. to be appear in Handbook of Statistics 15 (Chapter 12, 291–341)

Sac